

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 943SH.

- For proper handset use, read "Quick Tips" (in the box) and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 943SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**) about unclear or missing information.

# Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Universal Operations, Etc.	3
Calling	4
Messaging	5
Internet	6
Digital TV	7
Camera & Imaging	8
Video & Music	9
S! Applications & Widgets	10
Handy Extras	11
Entertainment	12
Handset Security	13
Data Folder & Memory Card	14
Connectivity & File Backup	15
Handset Customization	16
Appendix	17



## Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings in portrait position (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
- In this guide and on handset, "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

Guide Usage Notes .....	ii	Search .....	3-15	Browsing .....	6-6
Table of Contents .....	iii	Scratch Pad.....	3-16	Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	6-8
Accessory .....	v	Phone Book .....	3-17	RSS Feeds.....	6-9
Safety Precautions .....	vi	Additional Functions.....	3-20	Additional Functions.....	6-10
<b>1 Getting Started</b>		Troubleshooting .....	3-25	Troubleshooting .....	6-18
Handset Parts .....	1-2	<b>4 Calling</b>		<b>7 Digital TV</b>	
Charging Battery .....	1-4	Emergency Calls .....	4-2	Digital TV .....	7-2
Power On/Off .....	1-6	Voice Calling .....	4-3	TV Player .....	7-9
Display & Indicators.....	1-7	Video Calling.....	4-5	TV Timer .....	7-11
External Display .....	1-11	Decoration Call.....	4-6	Time Shift.....	7-12
Additional Functions .....	1-12	Speed Dial .....	4-7	Additional Functions.....	7-13
<b>2 Basic Operations</b>		Call Log .....	4-8	Troubleshooting .....	7-19
Interface & Storage .....	2-2	Call Time .....	4-9	<b>8 Camera &amp; Imaging</b>	
Menu Operations .....	2-4	Call Barring .....	4-10	Camera .....	8-2
Spinguru Menu .....	2-6	Optional Services.....	4-12	Photo Camera .....	8-5
Accessing Functions .....	2-9	Additional Functions.....	4-14	Video Camera .....	8-16
Cycloid Position .....	2-13	Troubleshooting .....	4-22	Opening Files.....	8-18
Motion Control.....	2-14	<b>5 Messaging</b>		Editing Images.....	8-22
Mobile Manners .....	2-16	Messaging.....	5-2	Printing.....	8-26
Security Codes .....	2-17	Sending Messages .....	5-4	Additional Functions.....	8-27
Basic Tools .....	2-18	Incoming Messages .....	5-11	Troubleshooting .....	8-33
Double Number .....	2-19	Handling Messages.....	5-14	<b>9 Video &amp; Music</b>	
Additional Functions .....	2-22	Chat Folders .....	5-17	Videos/Music .....	9-2
<b>3 Universal Operations, Etc.</b>		Mail Groups.....	5-18	Media Player.....	9-3
Font Size .....	3-2	PC Mail .....	5-19	Music .....	9-5
Wallpaper .....	3-3	Additional Functions.....	5-22	Video.....	9-6
Customized Screen.....	3-4	Troubleshooting .....	5-38	Playlists.....	9-7
Sounds & Alerts .....	3-5	<b>6 Internet</b>		Additional Functions.....	9-8
Text Entry .....	3-6	Internet Services .....	6-2	Troubleshooting .....	9-12
User Dictionary.....	3-11	Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3		
Dictionary.....	3-12	PC Sites.....	6-5		

**10 S! Applications & Widgets**

S! Appli .....	10-2
Mobile Widget.....	10-3
Additional Functions .....	10-6
Troubleshooting .....	10-10

**11 Handy Extras**

Calendar & Tasks .....	11-2
Alarms.....	11-8
Wakeup TV.....	11-10
Relaxation Time .....	11-12
Household Accounts .....	11-13
Calculator .....	11-17
Expenses Memo.....	11-18
Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-19
Simulated Call .....	11-23
Stopwatch.....	11-24
Countdown Timer .....	11-25
World Clock .....	11-26
Hour Minder.....	11-27
Pedometer .....	11-28
Compass.....	11-30
S! GPS Navi .....	11-31
Document Viewer.....	11-34
Notepad.....	11-35
ASCII Art .....	11-36
Voice Recorder .....	11-37
Scan Barcode .....	11-38
Create QR Code .....	11-39
Scan Card .....	11-40
Scan Text .....	11-41
Kanji Grabber .....	11-42

Additional Functions .....	11-43
Troubleshooting .....	11-56

**12 Entertainment**

S! Quick News .....	12-2
S! Information Channel.....	12-3
Content Downloads .....	12-4
e-Books.....	12-5
S! Friend's Status.....	12-6
S! Circle Talk.....	12-9
Near Chat.....	12-11
Blog Tool.....	12-12
Additional Functions .....	12-14
Troubleshooting .....	12-18

**13 Handset Security**

Handset Security.....	13-2
Function Control .....	13-4
Additional Functions .....	13-5

**14 Data Folder & Memory Card**

Data Folder .....	14-2
Memory Card .....	14-5
Additional Functions .....	14-7
Troubleshooting .....	14-10

**15 Connectivity & File Backup**

Wi-Fi .....	15-2
Infrared.....	15-7
IC Transmission .....	15-11
Bluetooth®.....	15-13
External Device Connection.....	15-17
Backup .....	15-18
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)....	15-20

Additional Functions .....	15-23
Troubleshooting .....	15-27

**16 Handset Customization**

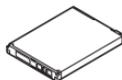
Date & Time .....	16-2
Display & Illumination.....	16-3
Incoming Transmissions .....	16-5
Sounds .....	16-6
Connectivity.....	16-7
Reset .....	16-8

**17 Appendix**

USIM Card .....	17-2
Battery.....	17-4
Software Update.....	17-5
Troubleshooting .....	17-6
Key Assignments .....	17-8
Pager Codes .....	17-10
Character Codes .....	17-11
Weather Indicators .....	17-17
Specifications.....	17-18
Menu List .....	17-25
Index.....	17-33
Warranty & Service .....	17-41
Customer Service.....	17-42

## Accessory

### ■ Battery (SHBCU1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).
- Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

## Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

**These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

 <b>DANGER</b>	<b>Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>WARNING</b>	<b>Risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>CAUTION</b>	<b>Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use</b>

**These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

 Prohibited	<b>Prohibited actions</b>
 Do Not Disassemble	<b>Disassembly prohibited</b>
 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	<b>Exposure to liquids prohibited</b>
 Do Not Use Wet Hands	<b>Use with wet hands prohibited</b>
 Compulsory	<b>Compulsory actions</b>
 Disconnect Power Source	<b>Unplug Charger from outlet</b>

**Handset, Battery, USIM Card,  
Charger (Sold Separately) &  
Memory Card (Sold Separately)**



**Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.**

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.**

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

**Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.**

Do not let liquid-exposed handset/related hardware remain wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc.; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use handset and related hardware in an appropriate place properly.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

**Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).**

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

**Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited



**Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

**Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.**

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; power handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

**Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.**

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

**If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:**

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power handset off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

**Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.**

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited



## CAUTION

**Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.**

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or while charging.



Prohibited

**Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.**

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

**If your child is using handset/related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.**

Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

## Battery



## DANGER

**Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.**

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

**Do not dispose of battery in fire.**

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

**If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.**

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory



## WARNING

**If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.**  
May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

**If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.**

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

**If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.**

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

**Keep battery away from pets.**

Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.



Compulsory



## CAUTION

**Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.**

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

## Handset

**WARNING****Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.**

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

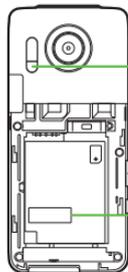


Prohibited

**CAUTION:**

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 &amp; A2:2001



Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 1M  
LED RADIATION WHEN OPEN  
DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH  
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

**Mobile Light LED Properties**

- Emission Duration: Continuous
- Wavelength  
White: 400 - 700 nm
- Maximum Emission Output  
White: 380  $\mu$ W (1.2 mW inside handset)

**Do not use handset while driving or cycling.**

Accidents may result. Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

**Power handset off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.**

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices: Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

**Power handset off before boarding aircraft to avoid radio waves from interfering with aircraft operation.**

If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.



Compulsory

**Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.**

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

**If thunder is heard while outdoors, power handset off; find cover.**

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

**Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.**

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

**Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.**

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.



Prohibited

**CAUTION****Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

**If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.**

Metal and other materials (P.17-18) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

**Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.**

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

**Do not swing handset by strap.**

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

## Safety Precautions

**Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.**

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

**Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

**Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.**

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

**Watch TV from a distance in good light.**

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

**Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

## Charger (Sold Separately)



## WARNING

**Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.**

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

**Use only the specified voltage.**

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

- AC Charger (sold separately):  
AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):  
DC 12V/24V Input

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

**Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.**

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect  
Power Source

**Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).**

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

**If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.**

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect  
Power Source

**If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.**

Fire may result.



Compulsory

**Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.**

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

**Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).**

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.**

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use  
Wet Hands

**Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.**

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

## CAUTION

**Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.**

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect  
Power Source

**Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.**

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.**

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

**Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.**

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

## Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

## WARNING

**Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.**

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

**If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.**

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



Compulsory

**Power handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.**

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Compulsory

## General Notes

### General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset/Memory Card files or settings. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**  
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
- **Eavesdropping**  
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

### Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to External Device Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always power handset off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or power handset off while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

### Bluetooth® Function

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from data/information leakage due to use of handset Bluetooth® function.

#### ■ Precautions

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact customer service:

**SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information**

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157.  
To call toll free from landlines, see **P.17-42** "Customer Service."

**Frequency Band**

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet). It is not possible for the radio station to avoid using the frequency band of the mobile unit identification apparatus.



**Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)**

Wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") uses radio waves to enable communication between compatible devices, thus allowing connection to a local area network from anywhere within the range. However, there is a risk of data interception unless security is established. It is advisable for the user to configure security settings on their own responsibility before using Wi-Fi.

- Do not use Wi-Fi near electrical appliances, audiovisual equipment or office automation equipment; may affect Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability, clarity, etc. (There is a possibility of interference especially when a microwave oven is in use.)
- The correct access point may not be detected correctly if there are multiple access points nearby.

**Precautions**

The frequency band utilized by handset Wi-Fi is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Wi-Fi, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or disable Wi-Fi immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact customer service:

**SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information**

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157.  
To call toll free from landlines, see **P.17-42** "Customer Service."

**Frequency Band**

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with DSSS-OFDM modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 40 meters (131 feet).



**Simultaneous Use with Bluetooth®**

Both Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11b/g) and Bluetooth® use the 2.4 GHz band. Therefore, Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability and clarity may be affected when Bluetooth® device is used near handset or when handset Bluetooth® is active. Should interference occur, discontinue use of the Bluetooth® device or cancel handset Bluetooth®.

- This handset supports Wi-Fi channels 1 - 13. Handset will not connect to access points set to other channels.
- Available channels vary by country.
- For use of Wi-Fi aboard aircraft, check with airline beforehand.
- In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

**Function Usage Limits**

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.16-7**) to restore usability.

**Mobile Camera**

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

**In-Call/Transmission Caution**

During calls/transmissions, calling/transmission charges/fees apply even if other functions or operations are simultaneously in use.

### Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

### CE Declaration of Conformity

**CE 0168** 

In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 943SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

### Battery - CAUTION

#### Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

### European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.

As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide\*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
943SH	1.806 W/kg	0.523 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

\*Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

\*\*Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

## FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
  - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
943SH	APYHRO00115	0.093 W/kg	0.336 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

## Rights, Trademarks & Patents

### Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

### Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs **RSA® BSAFE™** software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with **JBlend™** designed to accelerate the performance of **Java™** Application.

Powered by **JBlend™**.

Copyright 1997-2010

Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



The microSD and microSDHC logos are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

### NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2010 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

943SH wireless LAN is based on the IEEE 802.11 standard and is "Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™" by the Wi-Fi Alliance®; interoperability with other devices with the Wi-Fi logo is guaranteed.

943SH is compatible with IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g standards.



943SH employs Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) which simplifies the wireless LAN security setup (SSID, authentication method, security key, etc.) by using the PBC method or PIN method.



Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, WPA®, WPA2® and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.  
Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by MascotCapsule®.  
Powered by MascotCapsule®/3DView package™.  
MascotCapsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.  
©2002-2010 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.  
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.  
☞ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

OsaiFu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.  
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Cycloid, Cycloid Style, Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Simulated Call, AQUOS, Chase focus, Spinguru Menu, Pretty Arrange Camera and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.  
Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan  
Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan  
Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2009
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- Hot Pepper FooMoo ©RECRUIT
- Family Medical Encyclopedia ©Houken 2004
- Guide to Prescription Drugs ©Shigeru Kimura/Iyakuseidokenkyukai 2008
- Yahoo! Answers ©Yahoo Japan



EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DiMAGIC Co., Ltd.



Dynamic Range Adjustment is based on iridix technology by Apical Limited.

- Household Accounts™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.
- Kanji Grabber® is a registered trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid®, FaceSolid®, MovieSolid®, FrameSolid®, PhotoScouter®, TrackSolid® and Morpho Effect Library™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

Handset employs Face Sensing Engine (FSE)



developed by Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

FSE and the FSE logo are trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO Inc.

Chara Time and MOBILE KAKARICHO® are registered trademarks of Primeworks.

Machi-Uta® is a registered trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Application, S! GPS Navi, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, Video Call, Lifestyle-Appli, Input Memory, Decoration Call, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Ichi Navi, Sky Mail, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Secure Remote Lock, Auto Art, Keitai Wi-Fi and S-1 battle are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

### 943SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 943SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.271 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>  
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-empf.org/> (Japanese)

\*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

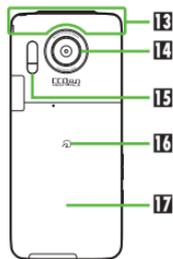
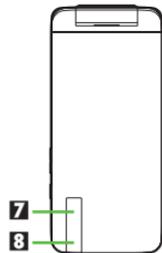
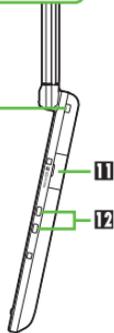
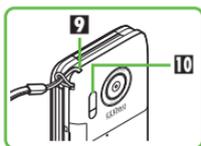
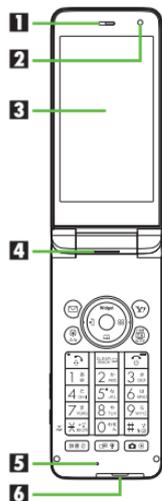
<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
Parts & Functions .....	1-2
<b>Charging Battery</b> .....	<b>1-4</b>
<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-6</b>
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6

<b>Display &amp; Indicators</b> .....	<b>1-7</b>
Display .....	1-7
Indicators .....	1-9
<b>External Display</b> .....	<b>1-11</b>
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>1-12</b>

# 1

## Getting Started

## Parts & Functions



- 1** Earpiece
- 2** Light Sensor
- 3** Display
- 4** Speaker
- 5** Microphone
- 6** External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 7** External Display
- 8** Small Light
- 9** Strap Eyelet
- 10** Infrared Port
- 11** Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)
- 12** Charging Terminals
- 13** Internal Antenna Location
- 14** Camera (lens cover)
- 15** Mobile Light
- 16** Logo
- 17** Battery Cover

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

### Display Positions

#### Closed Position



Keep handset closed when not in use.

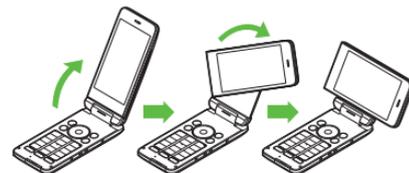
#### Portrait Position



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

#### Cycloid Position

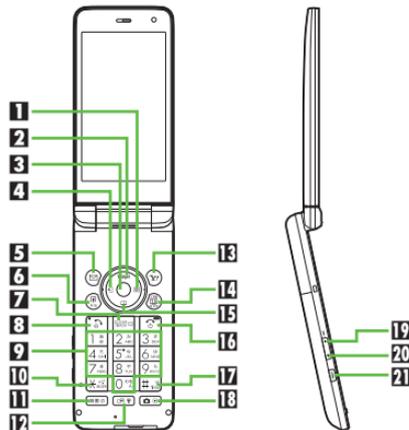
Open handset and rotate Display 90 degrees clockwise.



Do not forcefully rotate Display; damage may result.

## Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with  via Set Key Shortcut as needed.



- 1 Multi Selector (right)**  Open Icon View. Long Press to access last opened Icon View page.
- 2 Multi Selector (up)**  Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu.
- 3 Center Key**  Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.
- 4 Multi Selector (left)**  Open Call Log (Received). Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®.

- 5 Mail Key**  Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.
- 6 Shortcuts & A/a Key**  Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).
- 7 Clear/Back Key**  Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
- 8 Start Key**  Open Call Log (All). Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.
- 9 Keypad**  -  Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.
- 10 \* Key**  Enter \*, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to activate/cancel Wi-Fi.
- 11 Dictionary Key**  Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate/cancel VeilView.
- 12 Multi Job & Manner Key**  Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 13 Yahoo! Keitai Key**  Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote.
- 14 TV & Text Key**  Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.
- 15 Multi Selector (down)**  Open Phone Book. Long Press to open Exchange Profile menu.
- 16 Power On/Off Key**  Long Press to power handset off.

- 17 # Key**  Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 18 Camera Key**  Activate mobile camera. Long Press to open Album.

## Side Keys

- 19 Volume Up Key**  Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.
- 20 Volume Down Key**  **Portrait:** Show/hide Softkeys.
- 21 Movie Menu Key**  **Portrait:** Open Movie Menu. **Closed:** Toggle Clock view.

## Multi Selector &amp; Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press  or 	
Press  or 	
Press  ,  ,  or 	
Press  or 	

## Vector Pad

- Multi Selector touch sensor area. Adjust finger pressure to control scroll speed, or make circular motion for Spinguru Menu.

## 1 Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

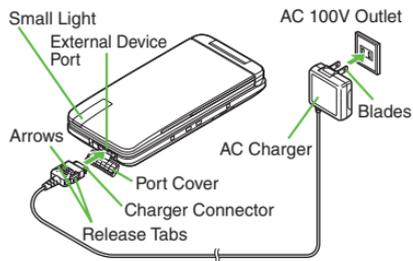
### Charging Battery Outside Japan

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

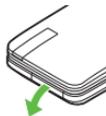
### AC Charger

Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only.

- In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm while charging.



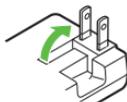
### 1 Open Port Cover as shown



### 2 Insert Charger Connector

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

### 3 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

### 4 Unplug AC Charger



- Pull AC Charger straight out.

### 5 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

### 6 Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

#### When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

#### Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

## USB Charge

Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

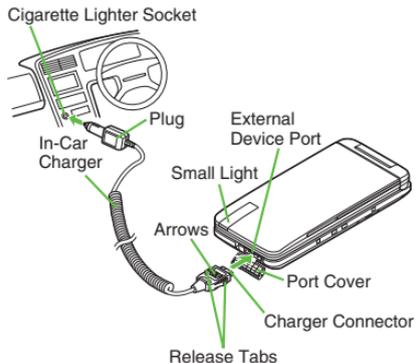
- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

## In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

### Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.



### 1 Open Port Cover

### 2 Insert Charger Connector

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

### 3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

### 4 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

### 5 Unplug Charger

### 6 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

### 7 Replace Port Cover

## Advanced

- Disabling USB Charge (P.1-12)



# Display

## Standby



Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and other icons.

## Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

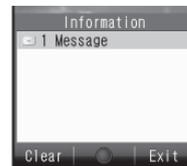
### 1 (Long)



- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Use to select indicators to view their descriptions.
- Press to open menu/window (e.g., Battery window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

## Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.



Information Window

Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.

### Opening Information List Manually

→ Phone → → Information →

### Clearing Information List

→ Phone → → Information → → → Yes →

## Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ,  and  appear at the bottom of Display in portrait position.



## Display Saving

Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key (except  during a call) to activate it.

## Backlight

- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press  -  to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).
- Display goes dark during a call. (Backlight does not turn off first.)

# Indicators

## Display Indicators

In Dual Mode, line type appears bottom right of some indicators.

### Basic Status

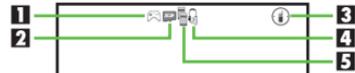


1		Within 3G range
		Within GSM range
		International roaming in progress
2		Signal strength <sup>1</sup>
3		Battery strength <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The more bars the better.

<sup>2</sup>Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.

### Function Status



1		Active S! Application <sup>*</sup>
		Paused S! Application <sup>*</sup>
		Music playback in progress
		TV recording in progress (handset)
		TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
2		Memory Card inserted
		Accessing Memory Card
		Reading Memory Card
		Formatting Memory Card
3		TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
		Compass Indicator
		Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> )
5		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

<sup>\*</sup>Appears gold for some S! Applications (Real 3D Games, etc.).

### Notifications

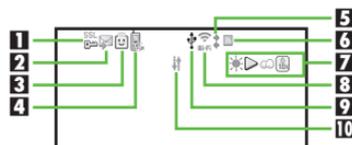


1		Unread mail
		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
6		Contents Key received
		Unread S! Information Channel info
7		Software Update result
		Unread S! Quick News info
8		Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request
		Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

### Warnings



1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

**Transmissions**


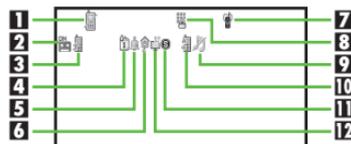
1	SSL browsing in progress <sup>1</sup>
2	Receiving mail Sending mail
3	S! Friend's Status online Positioning in progress <sup>2</sup>
4	Software Update in progress
5	Wi-Fi transmission in progress Keitai Wi-Fi available
6	RSS-compatible site
7	Weather Indicator
8	Connected to Wi-Fi network <sup>3</sup>

	USB Cable connected
	USB transmission in progress
	Infrared transmission in progress
	Infrared file transfer in progress
	Bluetooth® transmission ready
9	Bluetooth® transmission in progress (Ⓜ appears for multiple connections)
	Bluetooth® talk in progress
	IC Transmission in progress
	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	PC Site Browser in use
	Direct Browser in use
10	Infrared transmission ready

<sup>1</sup>Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.

<sup>2</sup>Flashes while positioning.

<sup>3</sup>The more blue bars the stronger the connection.

**Settings**


1	Offline Mode active
2	Answer Phone active
3	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: <b>Always</b> ) <sup>*</sup>

4	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	Alarm set
6	Hour Minder active
7	Manner mode active
	Drive mode active
	Original mode active
	VeiView active
8	Keypad Lock active
	IC Card Lock active
9	Ringtone (Silent)
	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
	Vibration for incoming Voice/Video Calls active
10	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
11	Show Secret Data active
	Function Lock (Once) active
12	Wakeup TV set

<sup>\*</sup>Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

## External Display

View date/time and the following indicators in closed position.

### Activating Backlight



- Press  to toggle view.

### Indicators

#### Basic Status



<b>1</b>	Signal strength*
<b>2</b>	Battery strength

\*The more bars the better.

#### Notifications

	Missed Calls
	Answer Phone message recorded
	Missed Call Notification
	New Voicemail
	Unread mail
	Unread Delivery Report
	Contents Key received
	Unread S! Information Channel info
	Weather Indicator update
	Location Info request
	Pedometer target achieved
	Videos/Music menu update
	S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
	Unread S! Friend's Status notification

#### Warnings

	Message delivery failure
	S! Information Channel info reception failure
	Decoration Call transmission failure
	IP Service connection failure
	Weather Indicator update failure
	Public wireless LAN auto authentication failure

#### Handset Status

	Alarm
	Schedule Alarm
	Task Alarm
	TV Alarm (watch)
	TV Alarm (record)

### Advanced

-  ● Changing Backlight illumination time ● Changing Clock view ● Hiding new received messages ● Viewing new messages ● Checking e-money balance (And more on P.1-12)

## USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● →  Connectivity → USB Charge → ● → Disable → ●</li> </ul>
----------------------	--

## External Display

### View Settings

Changing Backlight illumination time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Duration → ● → Select time → ●</li> </ul>
Changing Clock view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Display Date&amp;Time → ● → Select type → ●</li> </ul>
Changing Clock font	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Clock Type → ● → Select pattern → ●</li> </ul>
Showing Pedometer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Display Pedometer → ● → Select item → ●</li> </ul>

### Handset Responses

Hiding new received messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Messages → ● → Not Display → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding caller info	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Display → ● → External Display → ● → Caller Display → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>

## Operations

Viewing new messages	<p>With Backlight off,  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Use  to scroll message text; press  to view next messages.</li> <li>● Available in closed position.</li> </ul>
Checking e-money balance	<p>In closed position,  (Long) → Service name/balance appears →  → Standby returns</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Use  to view balances of listed entries.</li> <li>● Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand.</li> <li>● Not available when IC Card Lock is active.</li> </ul>

<b>Interface &amp; Storage</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>
Handset Interface & Media File Storage	
.....	2-2
Accessing Functions .....	2-3
<b>Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>2-4</b>
Main Menu .....	2-4
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)	
.....	2-5
<b>Spinguru Menu</b> .....	<b>2-6</b>
Using Spinguru Menu .....	2-7
<b>Accessing Functions</b> .....	<b>2-9</b>
Function Shortcuts .....	2-9
Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)	
.....	2-10
Standby Shortcuts .....	2-11
Icon View .....	2-12

<b>Cycloid Position</b> .....	<b>2-13</b>
Cycloid Position Setup .....	2-13
<b>Motion Control</b> .....	<b>2-14</b>
<b>Mobile Manners</b> .....	<b>2-16</b>
<b>Security Codes</b> .....	<b>2-17</b>
<b>Basic Tools</b> .....	<b>2-18</b>
My Details & Basic Tools .....	2-18
<b>Double Number</b> .....	<b>2-19</b>
Using Double Number .....	2-19
Modes .....	2-20
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>2-22</b>

# 2

## Basic Operations



## Handset Interface & Media File Storage

### Handset Operations

Use handset keys or Motion Control.

#### Handset Keys

Use Keypad, etc. in portrait position; supports all handset operations.



#### Vector Pad

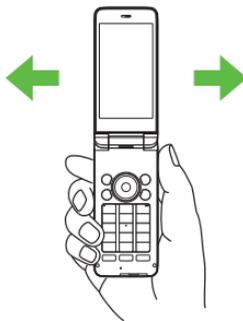
Multi Selector touch sensor area. Adjust finger pressure to control scroll speed; make circular motion for Spinguru Menu.



Use center area for operations; using edges may inhibit cursor movement/scroll speed.

### Motion Control

Move handset (e.g., shake it left or right, turn it over, etc.) to access functions, enlarge/reduce fonts or images, navigate functions, and more. (Complete setup beforehand.)



### Cycloid Position

Rotate Display to Cycloid position to watch TV or browse the Internet in widescreen, capture landscape images, and more.

### Media File Storage

While a Memory Card is inserted, captured images, downloads and some other files are saved to the card; change this setting in each function as needed.

- My Pictograms and Graphic Mail templates are saved to handset.
- Without a Memory Card, files are saved to handset automatically.



## Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

### Main Menu

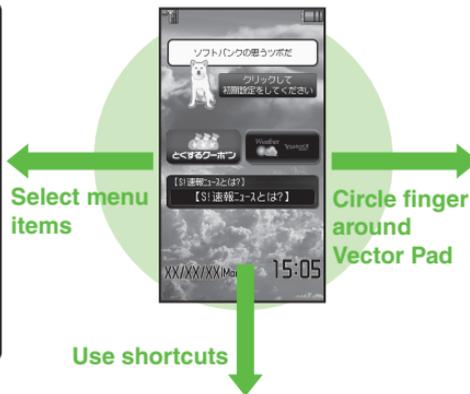


Repeat menu item selection.

### Spinguru Menu



Access recommended/frequently used functions or operation history, etc.



Select menu items

Circle finger around Vector Pad

Use shortcuts

### Shortcuts



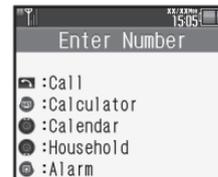
Access assigned functions (changeable).

### Standby Shortcuts



Save functions to Standby or Icon View.

### Quick Operations



Enter numbers to access functions. To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.



## Main Menu

2

Basic Operations

### Menu Item Selection

1



- Main Menu opens.

2 Select menu item →



- Menu/window opens.
- If Sub Menu opens, use to select an item and press .

### Tabs

- Menus/lists in a single window appear on separate tabs; use to toggle tabs.



Tab

### Reverse Navigation

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Returning to Standby

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Simple Menu

- Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

### Main Menu Items

<b>Messaging</b>	Open/create messages, etc.
<b>Yahoo!</b>	Browse the Internet
<b>S! Appli</b>	Use S! Applications including games
<b>Entertainment</b>	Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc.
<b>Camera</b>	Capture images or record video
<b>Videos/Music</b>	Access various media services
<b>Tools</b>	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
<b>Data Folder</b>	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
<b>Widget</b>	Use Mobile Widgets
<b>TV</b>	Watch/record TV programs
<b>Phone</b>	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
<b>Settings</b>	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.



## Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

### Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

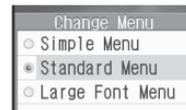
### ■ Menu Items

<b>Messaging</b>	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
<b>Phone</b>	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Call Log, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call Voicemail, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
<b>Camera</b>	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Album, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Kanji Grabber, Review
<b>Convenient Tool</b>	Calendar, Exchange Profile, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! GPS Navi, Pedometer, Compass, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
<b>Data Folder</b>	-
<b>TV</b>	-

Key assignments are largely the same as those in Standard Menu.

### Activating Simple Menu

#### 1 (Long)



#### 2 Simple Menu →

#### While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

#### Canceling Simple Menu

(Long) → Standard Menu →



## Spinguru Menu

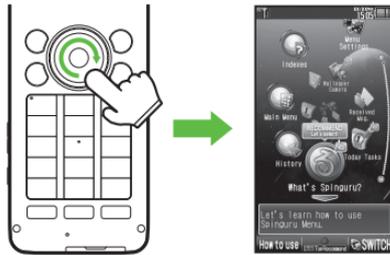
2

Basic Operations

### Basics

Circle finger around Vector Pad; keep moving finger to select functions suitable for time of day/situation, or frequently used/recently opened files/records, etc.

- Available in Standby and while using functions. If Spinguru Menu is opened while using functions, corresponding menu items also appear.



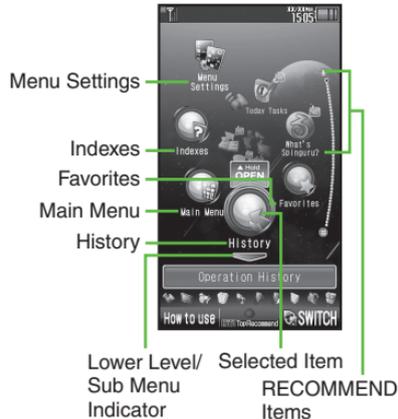
Spinguru Menu

- Spinguru Menu is available in landscape orientation as well.

### Menu Description

Example: Spinguru Menu opened in Standby

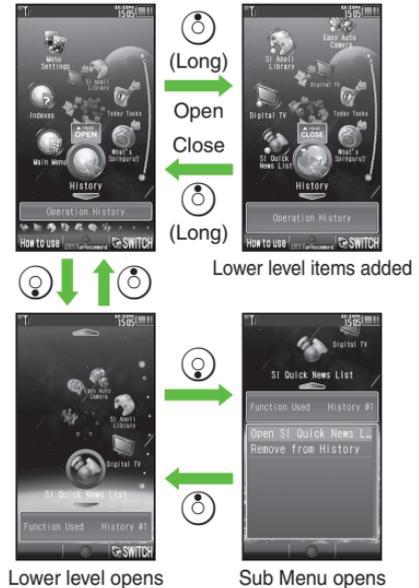
- Favorites (gateway to frequently used functions) appears from the second day after the first use of handset.



- Press **X** or **H** to jump left/right by seven items; Long Press **○** to return to initial item.

### Menu Navigation

Press **○** when **◀** appears to access lower level/Sub Menu; press **○** (when **▶** appears) to return.



# Using Spinguru Menu

## Opening Functions

### General Items

#### 1 Circle finger around Vector Pad



- Spinguru Menu opens.

#### 2 Circle finger further to select item



#### 3 Menu/window opens.

### Deleting Functions from Spinguru Menu

After ,  ➔ *Remove from Recommended Functions* ➔  ➔ *Yes* ➔ 

## Advanced

-   Sorting Favorites items  Deleting all Favorites items  Deleting all History items  Restoring deleted general items (P.2-22)

## Favorites & History

#### 1 In Spinguru Menu, select *Favorites or History* item



#### 2



- Lower level opens.

#### 3 Select item

#### 4 Follow onscreen instructions.

### Deleting Functions from Favorites or History

After ,  ➔ *Remove from Favorites or Remove from History* ➔  ➔ *Yes* ➔ 

## Main Menu

#### 1 In Spinguru Menu, select *Main Menu* item



#### 2

#### 3 Select item ➔ Follow onscreen instructions.



## Indexes (Japanese)

Search for functions by initial character of terms or keywords.

### 1 In Spinguru Menu, select *Indexes* item



- Character icons appear.



- Follow onscreen instructions.

## Spinguru Menu Settings

Follow these steps to reset Spinguru Menu:

### 1 In Spinguru Menu, select *Menu Settings* item



### 3 Initialize *Spinguru Menu*



- Yes

## Toggling View

Press to toggle Spinguru Menu between linear and spiral views. In linear view, press to access lower level items/Sub Menu; press to return.



Spinguru Menu  
(linear view)

Lower level/  
Sub Menu opens

## Opening Help

Press in Spinguru Menu to open operational instructions.

## Advanced

- Changing scroll speed
- Setting Spinguru Menu opening method
- Changing Spinguru Menu spin speed
- Calibrating Vector Pad (P.2-22)

# Function Shortcuts

## Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1



2 **Select function** → ●

- Menu/window opens.

### Changing Default Shortcuts

In ●, select numbered function → ● → **Assign Function** → ● → Select menu item → ● → Select new item → ●

- To assign menu items, select one and press ●.

### Assigning Files & Folders

In ●, select numbered function → ● → **Assign Data** → ● → Select file/folder → ●

- For folders, select **Set this folder** and press ●.

## Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ●, ● or ● to access assigned functions.

●	Open S! Mail Composition window
●	Open PC Site Browser menu
●	Open Exchange Profile menu
●	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
●	Access last opened Icon View page
●	Activate Familink Remote

## Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to ● (Long Press):

1 ● → **Settings** → ● → ● → **Phone** ●

2 **Set Key Shortcut** → ● → ● → **Long press** ● → ●

3 **From Appli** → ●

4 **Tools** → ● → In PIM/Life menu, **Calculator** → ●

## Bookmark

In ●, **From Bookmark** → ● → ● → **Select title** → ● → ● → **Yes** → ●

**Infrared, Show Secret Data, Etc. On/Off**  
In ●, **From Other** → ● → ● → **Select item** → ●

**Canceling Assigned Function**  
In ●, **Off** → ●

## Movie Menu

Open Movie Menu with a single key to access video-related functions.

1



- Movie Menu opens.

2 **Select function** → ●

- Menu/window opens.

## Advanced

- Changing item order
- Restoring default shortcuts (P.2-22)



## Toggle Active Functions (Multi Job)

### Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet



②

Toggle windows



Jot down information

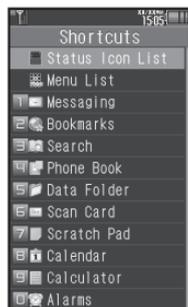
① Open Scratch Pad



- Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows (e.g., ringtone/ringvideo selection, etc.).
- Multi Job is disabled while  (gold) appears.

### Using Multi Job

- ① In a function window, .  
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press .



- ② Select function  .  
• Menu/window opens.

- ③ To toggle active windows, .

- ④   Multi Job ends  
• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.



## Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.

### Saving Shortcuts to Standby

1  →  → **Paste Icon** → 



2 **Select item** → 

- Corresponding icon appears.
- >> appears when more items are available.

3  **Specify target location**  
→ 

### Saving from Menu/Window

- Follow these steps in Options menu:  
(Available when **Set as StbyShortcut** appears.)  
**Set as StbyShortcut** →  →  
**Standby Screen** → 

### Using Shortcuts

1  →  **Select icon** →   
• Menu/window opens or command is executed.

### Unlocking Temporarily

 →  →  → **Enter Handset Code** → 

### Removing Shortcuts from Standby

1  →  **Select icon** →   
2 **Remove** → 

### Advanced

-      



## Icon View

Save shortcuts to functions, files, folders, widgets, etc. to Icon View for easy access.

### Saving Shortcuts to Icon View

- If selected page is full, remove icons first.
- Installed widgets are saved automatically.

1



Icon View Page

- Press or to open next or previous page. (Press in **Page 1** to return to Standby.)

2

3 **Select tab** **Select item**



- Corresponding icon appears.
- >> appears when more items are available.

4 **Specify target location**



#### Saving from Menu/Window

- Follow these steps in Options menu: (Available when **Set as StbyShortcut** appears.)

**Set as StbyShortcut** **Select page or New Page** **Specify target location**

#### When Five or More Pages Exist

- A confirmation appears after 1. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .
  - To disable confirmation, press .

### Using Shortcuts

1 **On Icon View page, select icon**

- Press or to open next or previous page. (Press in **Page 1** to return to Standby.)

### Accessing Last Opened Page

(Long)

### Showing Hidden Icons Temporarily

[Icon View Page] Enter Handset Code

### Removing Shortcuts

1 **On Icon View page, select icon** (Long)

2 **Cancel Icon**

### Advanced

- Moving icons
- Removing multiple icons at once
- Editing page names
- Hiding icons (And more on P.2-23)

## Cycloid Position Setup

Set handset to automatically execute one of these actions upon Display rotation:

<b>Activate Digital TV</b>	Activate TV
<b>Movie Menu</b>	Activate TV or access webcasting sites, video files and recorded programs
<b>Application Menu</b>	Activate mobile camera or access S! Applications, images and music files
<b>Show Internet Menu</b>	Open Bookmarks/ received messages or activate PC Site Browser/ Direct Browser
<b>Show Main Menu</b>	Open Main Menu
<b>Launch Appli</b>	Access assigned function
<b>Connect Bookmark</b>	Access saved URL
<b>Off(Standby)</b>	Keep Standby

Upon first rotation, setup menu opens.

### 1 Rotate Display (first time)



Landscape Menu

### 2 Select item → ●

- Setting is applied and Landscape setup option confirmation appears.

### 3 Yes or No → ●

- Selection appears.

#### Launch Appli or Connect Bookmark

- Handset accesses the assigned function or URL; change function/URL as needed.

### Changing Applied Setting

When **SetRotation** Softkey appears in Cycloid Position menus, etc., press  to change setting.



### 1

- Landscape menu opens.

### 2 Select item → ●

#### From Standby

- → **Settings** → ● → ● → **Phone/** 
- **Display Rotation** → ● → **Rotate 90° to** → ● → **Rotate 90° to** → ● → **Select item** → ●

### Advanced

-  ● Changing function assigned to Launch Appli in landscape menu ● Changing URL assigned to Connect Bookmark in landscape menu (P.2-23)



## Motion Control

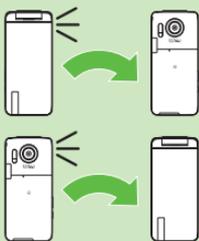
2

Basic Operations

Motion Sensor tracks handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, access functions, etc.

- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first. (Not necessary for activating Quick Silent.)
- Adjust Motion Sensor (**P.2-24**) before using Motion Control for the first time.
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

### Turn Over



### Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

#### Ringer

Incoming Calls,  
Alarms, etc.

#### Vibration

Incoming Calls,  
Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.

### Open Quick Shortcut

Shake handset left and right approximately three times in Standby to access assigned functions.

- Change assigned functions as needed.

### Re-search Signal

Portrait Position  
Cycloid Position



### Shake Left/Right



### Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

#### Music

Music Player

#### Channels

Digital TV

#### Images

Data Folder  
(Pictures)

#### Pages

Document  
Viewer

### Multi Job

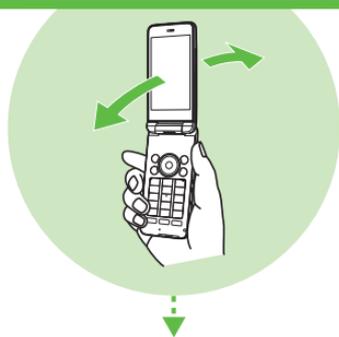
Shake to the left or right to toggle active windows.

#### Toggle Windows

Multi Job



## Shake Forward or Backward



## Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

## Fonts

Yahoo! Keitai  
Message Window

## Zoom Image

Data Folder  
(Pictures)

## Zoom Page

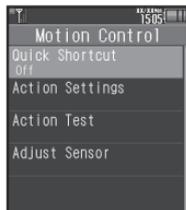
PC Site Browser  
Direct Browser  
Document Viewer

## Toggling Motion Control On/Off

1 → **Settings** → →

Phone/

2 **Motion Control** →



Motion Control Menu

3 **Action Settings** →

4 **Select function** →

5 **On or Off** →

## Enabling Quick Shortcut

1 **In Motion Control menu,**  
**Quick Shortcut** →

2 **Switch On/Off** →

3 **On** →

## Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily

Enter Handset Code → Shake handset left or right

- Close handset in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

## Important Motion Control Usage Notes

- Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results.
- Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

## Advanced

- Changing Quick Shortcut items
- Deleting Quick Shortcut items
- Restoring default Quick Shortcut items
- Practicing Motion Control actions
- Adjusting Motion Sensor (P.2-24)



# Mobile Manners

2

Basic Operations

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Power it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, buses, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1  (Long)



• Manner mode is set.

### When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 943SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.
- To unmute Speaker temporarily while playing music, etc., follow these steps:

During playback,  ➔  ➔  ➔ Yes or

No ➔ 

### Canceling Manner Mode

 (Long)

## Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔  **Network**

2 **Offline Mode** ➔ 

3 **On** ➔ 



• Offline Mode is set.

### Canceling Offline Mode

In **Off** ➔ 



## Advanced

-  Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings  Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation (P.2-24)

## Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

<b>Handset Code*</b>	<b>9999</b> by default; use or change some functions
<b>Administrator Code*</b>	<b>9999</b> by default; required for Reset Settings, Reset All, Direct Browser Lock, Proxy Setting, etc.
<b>Center Access Code</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
<b>Network Password*</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

\*Changeable on handset.

### Incorrect Code Entry

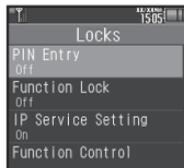
- Message appears for incorrect code entries; retry.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

### Changing Security Codes

Enter four to eight digits.

#### Changing Handset Code

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Phone**
- 2 **Locks** →



Locks Menu

- 3 **Chg. Handset Code** →

- 4 **Enter current Handset Code** →

- 5 **Enter new Handset Code** →

- 6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** →
  - To change Administrator Code subsequently, choose **Yes** and press .

- 7 **No** →

#### Changing Administrator Code

- 1 In **Locks** menu, **Administrator Setting** →
- 2 **Change Administrator Code** →
- 3 **Enter current Administrator Code** →
- 4 **Enter new Administrator Code** →
- 5 **Re-enter new Administrator Code** →



## My Details & Basic Tools

### My Number



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

#### Editing My Details

After 1, (select tab) Select item Select item Edit

### VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.



#### Canceling VeilView

(Long)

### Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

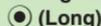


- Keypad Lock activates.
- does not power handset off.

#### Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

#### Canceling Keypad Lock



### Pen Light



- Mobile Light illuminates.



#### Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

### Battery Meter



- Approximate battery strength appears.

#### Battery Strength %

- 100% may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.

### Phone Help



- For *Indicators*, select a category and press .

## Advanced

- Clearing My Details
- Selecting My Details items to send
- Toggling My Details in Dual Mode
- Changing battery strength indicator pattern
- Changing VeilView pattern/density (P.2-25)

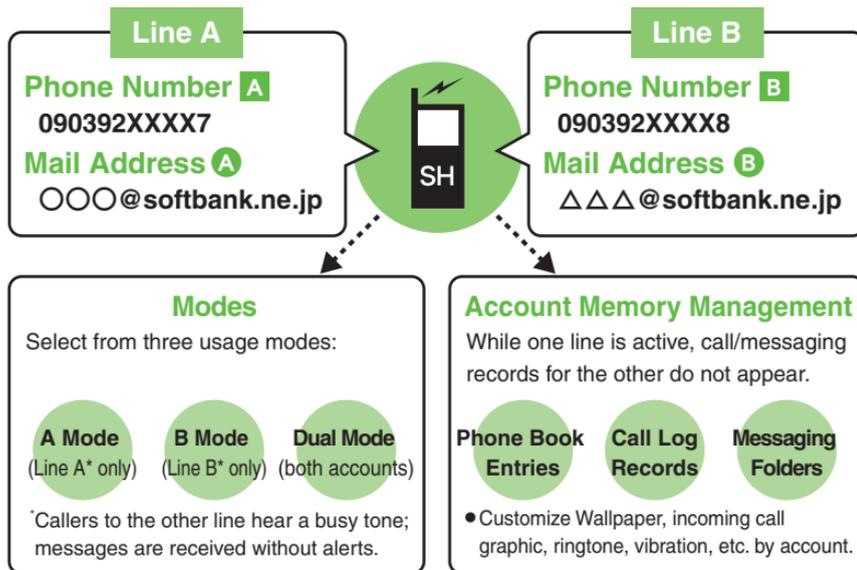


## Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Outside Japan, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
- For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).

### Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



### Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Phone/Message**
- 2 **Double Number** →
- 3 **Switch On/Off** →
- 4 **On** →
- 5 **Enter Handset Code** → → **Yes** →

### Canceling Double Number

- In 4, **Off** → →
- When Double Number is canceled:
    - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
    - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
    - Double Number account is not affected.



## Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts.

### A Mode

#### Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

#### A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

### B Mode

#### Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

#### B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

## Advanced

- Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes
- Renaming Double Number modes
- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.2-25)



## Dual Mode

## Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

## Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

## Messaging

Select Line A or Line B.  
Sender Address changes accordingly.

## Calling

Select Line A or Line B.  
Caller ID changes accordingly.

- Line type indicators appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

## Switching Modes

-  (Long)
- Enter Handset Code ➔ ●
- Select mode ➔ ●
  - For *B Mode*, a confirmation appears.
- Yes ➔ ●

## In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press ●.



A Line A  
B Line B

If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press Ⓞ to switch.



If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

## Advanced

-  ● Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode ● Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.2-25)



## Spinguru Menu

Sorting Favorites items	Open Spinguru Menu → Select <i>Menu Settings</i> item →  → <i>Sort Favorites</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Deleting all Favorites items	Open Spinguru Menu → Select <i>Menu Settings</i> item →  → <i>Delete All Favorites</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Deleting all History items	Open Spinguru Menu → Select <i>Menu Settings</i> item →  → <i>Delete All Histories</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Restoring deleted general items	<small>[Start Here]</small> Open Spinguru Menu → Select <i>Menu Settings</i> item →  → See below  <b>All Items</b> <i>Restore All Recommended Functions Deleted</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →  <b>One Item</b> <i>Select Restore XX</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Changing scroll speed	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Phone/</i> → <i>Vector Pad Settings</i> →  → <i>Scroll Speed</i> →  → <i>Select speed</i> →
Setting Spinguru Menu opening method	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Phone/</i> → <i>Vector Pad Settings</i> →  → <i>Launch Spinguru Menu by</i> →  → <i>Select method</i> →
Changing Spinguru Menu spin speed	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Phone/</i> → <i>Vector Pad Settings</i> →  → <i>Jog Speed</i> →  → <i>Select speed</i> →
Calibrating Vector Pad	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Phone/</i> → <i>Vector Pad Settings</i> →  → <i>Correct Vector Pad</i> →  →  (Long)

## Shortcuts

Changing item order	→ <i>Select numbered function</i> →  → <i>Move</i> →  → <i>Select target location</i> →
Restoring default shortcuts	→ <i>Select numbered function</i> →  → <i>Set to Default</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →

## Standby Shortcut

### Operations in Standby

Sorting icons	→  → <i>Operation</i> →  → <i>Sort Icon</i> →  → <i>Select option</i> → • Widgets may also be sorted depending on the size.
Moving icons	→  → <i>Select icon</i> →  → <i>Change Layout</i> →  → <i>Specify target location</i> →
Moving icons to front/back	→  → <i>Select icon</i> →  → <i>Operation</i> →  → <i>To Front or To Back</i> →
Removing multiple icons at once	→  → <i>Operate from List</i> →  → <i>Remove</i> →  → <i>Shortcut</i> → <i>Select icon</i> →  (☑) → <i>Complete selection</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Locking icons	→  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Lock Settings</i> →  → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> →  → <i>On</i> →



Icon View	
Moving icons	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Change Layout</i> → ● →</p> <p>Select icon → ● → Specify target location →</p> <p>● → ⌂</p>
Pasting to Standby	<p>⌂ → Select icon (widget) → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Set as StbyShortcut</i> → ● → Specify target location → ●</p>
Removing multiple icons at once	<p>Start Here ⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Operate from List</i> → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Selected Icons</b></p> <p><i>Select &amp; Remove</i> → ● → Select tab →</p> <p>Select icon → ● (☑) → Complete selection →</p> <p>⌂ → Yes → ●</p>
	<p><b>Whole Page</b></p> <p><i>Remove All</i> → ● → Select page → ⌂ → Yes → ●</p>
Switching pages	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → Select page → ●</p>
Changing page order	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Move Page</i> → ● → Select target location → ●</p>
Inserting pages	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Insert Page</i> → ● → <i>Insert Previous or Insert Next</i> → ●</p>
Editing page names	<p>Start Here ⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Settings/Manage</i> → ● → <i>Change Page Name</i> → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Renaming</b></p> <p>Select page → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
	<p><b>Resetting All Page Names</b></p> <p>⌂ → Yes → ●</p>

Hiding icons	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Settings/Manage</i> → ● →</p> <p><i>Icon Off Setting</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code →</p> <p>● → Select page → ● → On → ●</p>
Opening properties	<p>⌂ → Select icon (widget) → ⌂ (Long) →</p> <p><i>Details</i> → ●</p>
Deleting invalid icons	<p>⌂ → ⌂ (Long) → <i>Settings/Manage</i> → ● →</p> <p><i>Remove Invalid Icon</i> → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Accessing last opened page with ⌂	<p>⌂ → ⌂ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → ● → <i>Key Settings</i> →</p> <p>● → <i>Last Visited Page</i> → ●</p>

### Cycloid Position

Changing function assigned to <i>Launch Appli</i> in landscape menu	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → ● → <i>Phone/</i> →</p> <p><i>Display Rotation</i> → ● → <i>Rotate 90° to</i> → ●</p> <p>→ <i>Set Appli</i> → ● → Select menu item → ● →</p> <p>Select new item → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change is also effective when Rotate 90° is set to <i>Launch Appli</i> via Main Menu.</li> </ul>
Changing URL assigned to <i>Connect Bookmark</i> in landscape menu	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → ● → <i>Phone/</i> →</p> <p><i>Display Rotation</i> → ● → <i>Rotate 90° to</i> → ●</p> <p>→ <i>Set Bookmark</i> → ● → Select Bookmark entry → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change is also effective when Rotate 90° is set to <i>Connect Bookmark</i> via Main Menu.</li> </ul>



## Motion Control

Changing Quick Shortcut items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Phone/☎ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → Open Position or Cycloid Position → ● → Select menu item → ● → Select new item → ●</li> <li>• To assign menu items, select one and press ☑.</li> </ul>
Deleting Quick Shortcut items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Phone/☎ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → Open Position or Cycloid Position → ☑ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Restoring default Quick Shortcut items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Phone/☎ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → ☑ → Reset Settings → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Practicing Motion Control actions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Phone/☎ → Motion Control → ● → Action Test → ● → Select item → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Adjusting Motion Sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → Phone/☎ → Motion Control → ● → Adjust Sensor → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> <li>• Avoid adjusting Motion Sensor near metal/magnetic objects or aboard trains or in vehicles.</li> </ul>

## Mode Settings

Changing handset modes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting a Handset Mode</li> <li>Select mode → ●</li> </ul>
Creating a custom mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Customizing Handset Modes</li> <li>Select mode → ☑ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</li> <li>• Not available for Normal mode.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Original → ☑ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</li> </ul>
Resetting Mode Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Select mode → ☑ → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Manner → ☑ → Audio Confirmation → ● → Do not Show → ●</li> </ul>



My Details	
Clearing My Details	→  →  → <i>Reset My Details</i> →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →
Selecting My Details items to send	→  →  → <i>Set Send Items</i> →  →  → <b>Select item</b> →  →  (  /  ) → <b>Complete selection</b> →
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	→  →  → <i>Switch to B or Switch to A</i> →

Battery Meter	
Changing battery strength indicator pattern	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>In Sound/Display menu, Display</i> →  → <i>Mini Battery</i> →  →  → <b>Select pattern</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Battery strength (appears as a percentage) is for reference only.</li> </ul>

VeilView	
Changing VeilView pattern/density	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>In Sound/Display menu, Display</i> →  → <i>VeilView</i> →  → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Pattern</b> <i>Pattern Setting</i> →  → <b>Select pattern</b> →  →  → <b>Select scale or Animation</b> →
	<b>Density</b> <i>Density Setting</i> →  → <b>Select density</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not available when pattern is set to <i>Animation</i>.</li> </ul>

Double Number	
<b>All Modes</b>	
Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Password Entry</i> →  →  → <b>Off</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →
Renaming Double Number modes	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Mode Name</i> →  →  → <b>Select mode</b> →  → <b>Enter name</b> →  →  → <b>Select icon</b> →

A Mode & B Mode	
Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Show Missed</i> →  →  → <b>On</b> →
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Packet Warning</i> →  →  → <b>Off</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for B Mode.</li> </ul>

Dual Mode	
Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Reject By Line</i> →  →  → <b>Select line</b> →  →  → <b>On</b> →
Setting main line for Dual Mode	→ <i>Settings</i> →  →  → <i>Phone/</i> →  → <i>Double Number</i> →  → <i>Send Priority</i> →  →  → <b>Select option</b> →



<b>Font Size</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
Changing Font Size .....	3-2
<b>Wallpaper</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Customized Screen</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
Customized Screen (Japanese) .....	3-4
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> .....	<b>3-5</b>
Customizing Handset Responses ...	3-5
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>
Entering Characters.....	3-7
Editing Characters .....	3-10
<b>User Dictionary</b> .....	<b>3-11</b>
Saving Frequently Used Words .....	3-11

<b>Dictionary</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>
Using Dictionaries (Japanese) .....	3-12
<b>Search</b> .....	<b>3-15</b>
Searching Text.....	3-15
<b>Scratch Pad</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Phone Book</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>
Creating Phone Book Entries .....	3-17
Using Phone Book Entries .....	3-19
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>3-25</b>

# 3

## Universal Operations, Etc.



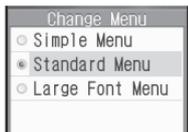
## Changing Font Size

### Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1 (Long)



2 **Large Font Menu**

Canceling Large Font Menu  
In 2, **Standard Menu**

### Customizing Font Sizes

1 **Settings**



2 In Sound/Display menu, **Display**

3 **Font Settings**



Font Settings Menu

4 **Font Size** **Select item**

5 **Select size**

### Changing Font Weight

1 In Font Settings menu, **Font Weight**



2 **Select weight**

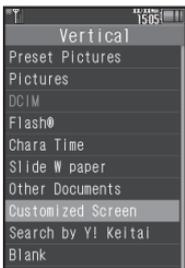


## Wallpaper

1 → **Settings** → → In **Sound/Display menu, Display** →

2 **Wallpaper** →

3 **Vertical or Horizontal** →



Wallpaper Menu

4 **Select folder** →

5 **Select file** →

- Some files may not be usable.
- Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in 4.

6

### Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display

After , select option → →

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

Downloading Images via Yahoo! Keitai  
In 4, **Search by Y! Keitai** →

- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

### Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:  
**Yes** → →

### If Double Number Mode Menu Opens

Select mode →

### Selecting Chara Time Files

In 4, **Chara Time** → → Select file  
→ → →

- If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

### Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some images may not appear.

1 In Wallpaper menu, **Slide Wallpaper** →

2 **Folder Setting** →

3 **Pictures or DCIM** →

4 **Select sub folder** → → **Set this folder** →

- Omit steps for sub folder if none.

### If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

### Using Preset Images

In , **Preset Pictures** →

### Changing Pattern

In , **Pattern Setting** → → Select **pattern** →

- To check patterns, select one and press .



## Customized Screen (Japanese)

### Preset Customized Screens

- 1  → 
- 2 **Preset Screens** → 
- 3 **Select pattern** → 
- 4  → 

#### When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after ③. To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

### Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

- 1  → **Data Folder** →  → **Customized Screen** → 



Customized Screen Menu

- 2 **Download Customized Screen** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Customized Screen Setup

- 1 **In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen** → 

- 2  → 

#### Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:

After ①,  → **Yes** → 

- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

### Advanced

-   Canceling Customized Screen
-  Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally
-  Deleting Customized Screens
-  Accessing Customized Screen source sites (P.3-20)



# Customizing Handset Responses

## Ringtones

- 1 → **Settings** → → In **Sound/Display menu, Sounds & Alerts** →



Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** →
- 3 **Select item** →

For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press .



- 4 **Select folder** →
- 5 **Select tone/file** →

**Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.**  
After , **Duration** → → Enter time →

**Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions**  
In 4, **Videos** → → Select file →

**If Portion of File Content is Specifiable**

- After , start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:

**Select start point** →

**Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period**

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

## Machi-Uta® Service Registration (Japanese)

Use Machi-Uta® to play music instead of the standard ringback tone for the other party.

Machi-Uta® requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts menu, Machi-Uta** →

- 2 **Register/Cancel** →
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

## Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts menu, Vibration** →
- 2 **Select item** → → **Switch On/Off** →
- 3 **On** →
- 4 **Vibration Pattern** →
  - To check vibration patterns, select one and press .
- 5 **Select pattern** →

**Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration**  
In , **Link to Sound** →

### Important Vibration Usage Note

- Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

## Advanced

Using Machi-Uta® (Japanese) (P.3-20)



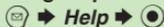
## Text Entry

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.

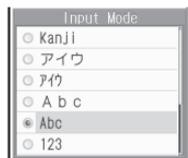


Text Entry Window (Message Text)

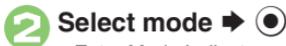
### Opening Help



### Switching Entry Modes



- Available entry modes appear.



- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (Hiragana)
	Double/Single-byte Katakana
	Double-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte Number
	Character Code

appears when Predictive is active.

### Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

**Example: In Double-byte Katakana mode, press three times.**



- Press to toggle options in reverse. To type characters assigned to the same key, press first.

**Example: In Single-byte Alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.**



- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



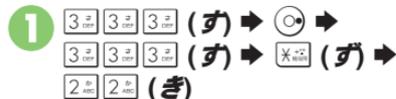
### Advanced

- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.3-20)

# Entering Characters

## Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in Kanji (Hiragana) mode:



2 (Confirm)

## Kanji

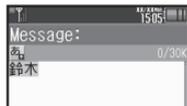
Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

1 Type **すずき**



- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana are typed. (Predictive)
- Long Press (Ⓜ) to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male, Female and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

2



3 **鈴木**

- To exit suggestion list, press (Ⓜ).

4



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

### When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press (Ⓜ) or (Ⓜ) to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - Press (Ⓜ) to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

### Single Kanji Conversion

Type reading in hiragana → (Ⓜ) (Long)

## Advanced

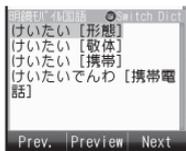
- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.3-20 - 3-21)



## Entering from Dictionaries (Search Word)

Enter text by referring to word definitions, translations, etc.

### 1 Type hiragana ➔ Before completing entry,



- Press  to toggle dictionaries.

### 2 Select word, etc. ➔

- Definition/translation appears.

### 3

## One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **すずき** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

### 1 (す) ➔

### 2 Select word/phrase ➔

## Katakana

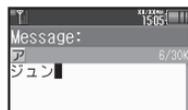
Follow these steps to switch to Double-byte Katakana mode and enter **ジュン**.

### 1 ➔ アイウ ➔

### 2 (シ) ➔ (ジ) ➔

### (ユ) ➔ (ユ) ➔

### (ン) ➔



## Pictograms & Symbols

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

### 1

- Pictogram or Symbol List appears. (Log appears if Pictogram/Symbol has been used.)

### 2 (toggle tabs) ➔ or (toggle Lists)



- While entering message text, press  in Pictogram List to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms. Alternatively, press  to switch to My Pictogram List.

### 3 Select Pictogram or Symbol ➔

- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte entry modes.

### 4 ➔ List closes



## Emoticons

1 ➔ **Emoticons** ➔

2 **Select emoticon** ➔

## Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

## EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

## Mail &amp; Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1 ➔ **Quick Addr. List** ➔

2 **Select extension** ➔

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/  
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in Kanji (Hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**

Use key inscriptions.

1 ➔



2 **Select word/phrase (PM)**



## Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter **終電**

1 ➔ ➔



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)**



## One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .



## Editing Characters

### Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願  
いしす** to **また明日お願いします**.

#### 1 Select character



#### 2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

#### 3 Select target location → Enter characters



### Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press to recover characters deleted with .

### Deleting All Text

- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

### Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- → **Cursor Position** → ● → **Jump to End or Jump to Top** → ●

### Copy/Cut & Paste

#### 1 → **Cut or Copy** → ● → **Select first character** → ●



Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

#### 2 **Highlight text range** → ●

#### 3 **Select target location** → (Long)



- Text is entered.

### Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

#### **Select target location** → → **Paste** → ● → **Select text** → ●

- Available when Paste List appears.

### Advanced

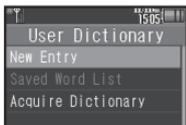
- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.3-20)

## Saving Frequently Used Words

### Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 **Settings** → **Phone/** → **User Dictionary**



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** → **Enter word**
- 3 **Enter reading**

### Editing Entries

- In **Saved Word List** → **Select word** → **Edit** → **Edit reading** → **Yes**

### 943SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Get specialized 943SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site (**シャブメカ** **943SH-web** in Bookmarks; see P.6-8).

Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.

Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In **User Dictionary menu**, **Acquire Dictionary**
- 2 **Select number** → **Select dictionary**
  - Existing dictionary is replaced.

### Canceling Dictionary

- In **select dictionary** → **Cancel**

### Viewing Dictionary Information

- In **select dictionary** → **Info**

### Reply Assist Dictionary (**メール返信アシスト辞書**)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words (katakana or alphanumerics) in suggestion list.
- Effective in Kanji (Hiragana) mode.

### Advanced

- ☞ **Deleting entries (P.3-21)**



## Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries*	Online Dictionaries
Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary	Yahoo! Answers, Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper FooMoo, Amazon.co.jp, Family Medical Encyclopedia, Guide to Prescription Drugs

\*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

### Online Dictionaries

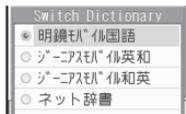
- Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

### Advanced

- Changing Font Size
- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Viewing dictionary information
- Updating dictionary list (And more on P.3-21)

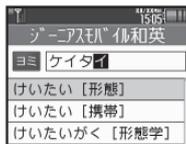
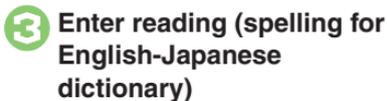
### Using Preloaded Dictionaries

#### Searching As-You-Type



Dictionary Window

- Last used dictionary appears first.



- Enter reading in katakana.
- Search results appear as you type.



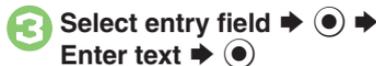
Definition/Translation Window

### Looking Up in Online Dictionaries [Definition/Translation Window]

➔ **WebDict.Search** ➔ ●

- Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on P.3-13. (Read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.)

### Searching by Keyword



- Definition/translation window opens.



## Copying Text

## Selected Portions

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Select first character ➔ ●  
➔ Highlight text range ➔ ●

## Index Word Only

1 In definition/translation window, ☒

2 Copy Index Word ➔ ●

## Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1 In Dictionary window, ☒

2 Add Dictionary ➔ ●

3 Select file ➔ ●

## Canceling Added Dictionary

In ☒, Cancel Dictionary ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

## Using Online Dictionaries

1 辞書 ☒ ➔ ㄣ ➔ ネット辞書 ➔ ●

- Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press ●. Subsequently, image download options appear; select one and press ●.

2 Select pull-down menu ➔ ●



3 Select dictionary ➔ ●

- Select すべて to look up in all dictionaries at once.

4 Select entry field ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ●

5 Search ➔ ●

6 Yes ➔ ●

7 Select word, etc. ➔ ●  
• Definition/translation window opens.

## Disabling Confirmation

After ☒, ☒ (☑) ➔ From ☒

## Viewing Dictionary Information

After ☒, select word, etc. ➔ ☒ ➔

Reference ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

## Looking Up in Preloaded Dictionaries

After ☒, ☒ ➔ Find by Other Dict. ➔

● ➔ Select dictionary ➔ ● ➔

Search ➔ ● ➔ Select word, etc. ➔ ●

## Opening Terms of Service

After 1, ☒ ➔ Terms of service ➔ ●

- Press ● to return to Dictionary window.

## Advanced

☒ ● Selecting dictionaries for use ● Selecting search method ● Selecting search area (And more on P.3-21 - 3-22)



## Using History &amp; Bookmarks

## Saving Bookmarks

1 In definition/translation window, 

2 **Bookmark** ➔ 

## Opening History or Bookmarks

1 In Dictionary window, 

2 **History List** or **Bookmark List** ➔ 

3 **Select word, etc.** ➔ 

- Definition/translation window opens.
- Not available in History List of online dictionaries.

## Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

1 **Type text** ➔ **Before completing entry**, 

2 **Select dictionary** ➔ 

3 **Search** ➔  ➔ **Select word, etc.** ➔ 

- Definition/translation window opens.

## Inserting Index Word into Text

After ,  ➔ **Paste Index Word** ➔ 

## Advanced

-   Deleting history records or bookmarks (P.3-21)



## Searching Text

### Web Search

Packet transmission fees apply.

- 1 **Tools** → **Doc./Rec.**
- 2 **Search**



Search Window

- **Web Search** is selected by default.

- 3 **Select entry field** → **Enter search text**
  - 4 **Search**
- Search results appear.

### Switching Browsers

[Search Window] → **Change Browser** → **Select browser**

### Mail Search

- 1 **In Search window, Mail Search**
- 2 **Select entry field** → **Enter search text**
- 3 **Search**
- 4 **Select option**

### Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window] → **Change Mail Folder** → **Received Messages or Sent Messages**



## Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

1 → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.**

2 **Scratch Pad** →   
 • Text entry window opens.

3 **Enter text** →



4 **Save to Notepad** →   
 • Open saved entries from Notepad.

### Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation in 4
Paste to Standby or Icon View	<b>Set as StbyShortcut</b> →
Enter Mail Message Text	<b>Create Message</b> → → Select mail type →
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	<b>Save to Calendar</b> →
Enter Task Subject/Details	<b>Save to Tasks</b> →
Add Last Name/Phone Number/Mail Address to Phone Book	<b>Save to Phone Book</b> → ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	<b>Save as Text File</b> → → Enter name →  →
	<b>Save here</b> → ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	<b>Web Search</b> →  → Select browser →

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



## Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

**1**  $\rightarrow$  **Phone**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Add New Entry**  $\rightarrow$

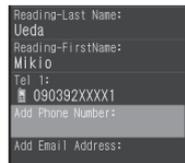


**2** **Last Name:**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Enter last name**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **First Name:**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Enter first name**  $\rightarrow$



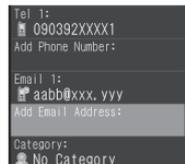
- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

**3** **Add Phone Number:**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Enter phone number**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Select type**  $\rightarrow$



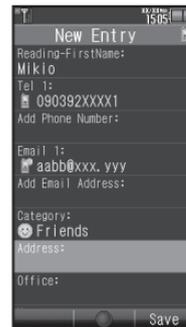
- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

**4** **Add Email Address:**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Enter mail address**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Select type**  $\rightarrow$



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

**5** **Category:**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Select Category**  $\rightarrow$



Phone Book Entry Window

**6**  $\rightarrow$  **Save**

- Entry is saved to Phone Book.

### Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

### Selecting Mode in Dual Mode

[Phone Book Entry Window] **Mode:**

$\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  **Select mode**  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$

## Advanced

- Saving other information
- Changing Small Light status
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Changing Category icons
- Changing Category order (P.3-22 - 3-23)



## Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call*: ➔ ●
- 2 *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ●
- 3 Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ

## Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, *Secret*: ➔ ●
- 2 *On* ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ

## Accessing Secret Entries

- Ⓜ ➔ ● ➔ *Unlock Temporarily* ➔ ●
- ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

## Customizing Response by Category

- 1 ● ➔ *Phone* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Category* ➔ ●
- 2 Select *Category* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ●
- 3 Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ *Customize responses*
  - Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
  - Not available for USIM Card.

## Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

- Settings for each entry take priority.

## Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, *New Entry* ➔ ● ➔ *Complete other fields* ➔ Ⓜ

## Saving to an Existing Entry

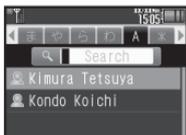
- In 1, *New Detail* ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ *Complete other fields* ➔ Ⓜ



## Using Phone Book Entries

### Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 ➔ **Select katakana row**



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear.

- 2 **Select entry** ➔

- 3 **Select phone number**

- 4

### Placing Video Calls

After , ➔ **Video Call** ➔

### Changing Search Method

- 1 **In entry search window,** ➔ **Ph.Book Settings** ➔

- 2 **Sort Entries** ➔

- 3 **Select method** ➔

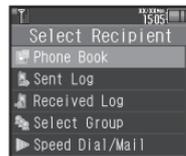
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

**Changing Search Method Temporarily**  
[Entry Search Window] (press to toggle search methods)

### Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 **Phone Book** ➔

- Entry search window opens.

- 2 **Select entry** ➔

- 3 **Select phone number or mail address** ➔

- Recipient is entered.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.

### Advanced

- Changing view for entry search window
- Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions
- Messaging via Phone Book
- Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book
- Deleting Phone Book entries
- Checking memory status
- Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.3-22 - 3-24)



## Customized Screen

Canceling Customized Screen	<p>● →  → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally	<p> → Menu List → ● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Customized Screen → ● → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Deleting Customized Screens	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen →  → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Accessing Customized Screen source sites	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen →  → Web Access → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>

## Machi-Uta®

Using Machi-Uta® (Japanese)	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Sounds &amp; Alerts → ● → Machi-Uta → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Searching Music</b> Music Search → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Settings</b> Settings → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Viewing Machi-Uta® Information</b> What's Machi-Uta → ●</p>

## Text Entry

### Entry & Edit

Using Character Codes	In a text entry window,  → Character Code → ● → Enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window,  → Input/Conversion → ● → Input Method → ● → Pager Code → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Return to text entry window and enter two digits.</li> </ul>
Inserting line breaks	<b>At the End of Text</b> In a text entry window, <b>Mid-Entry</b> In a text entry window,  →  (select Symbols) → ( or ) →
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window,
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window,  → Input/Conversion → ● → Reset Log → ● → Yes → ●
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window,  → Undo/Recover → ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window,  → Insert/Font Size → ● → Phone Book → ● → Select entry → ● → Select item → ●
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window,  → Insert/Font Size → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●



## Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window,  → <b>Input/Conversion</b> →  → <b>Predictive</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <b>Input/Conversion</b> →  → <b>Previous Usage</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <b>Input/Conversion</b> →  → <b>EmoticonWordLink</b> →  → <b>Off</b> →
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window,  → <b>Input/Conversion</b> →  → <b>Set Low Priority</b> →  → <b>Select type</b> →  →
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window,  → <b>Input/Conversion</b> →  → <b>Personal Mode</b> →  → <b>Select mode</b> →

## User Dictionary

Deleting entries	→ <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Phone/Email</b> → <b>User Dictionary</b> →  → <b>Saved Word List</b> →  → <b>Select word</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
------------------	--

## Dictionary

### Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	→ <b>Font Size</b> →  → <b>Select size</b> →
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text,  → <b>Search by Copied Text</b> →  → <b>Search</b> →  → <b>Select word, etc.</b> →

Deleting history records or bookmarks	→ <b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>History List or Bookmark List</b> →  → <b>See below</b>
	<b>One Word</b> → <b>Select word</b> →  → <b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
	<b>All Words</b> → <b>Delete All</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries	→ <b>Kanji Grabber</b> →  → <b>Frame</b> →  → <b>Kanji in Loupe</b> →  → <b>Search</b> →  → <b>Select word, etc.</b> → • Definition/translation window opens.
Looking up scanned text in dictionaries	→ <b>Scan Text</b> →  → <b>Frame text in center of Display</b> →  → <b>Select line</b> →  → <b>Search</b> →  → <b>Select word, etc.</b> → • Definition/translation window opens.
Viewing dictionary information	→ <b>Information</b> →
Updating dictionary list	→ <b>ネット辞書</b> →  → <b>Update Dictionaries</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
Selecting dictionaries for use	→ <b>ネット辞書</b> →  → <b>Edit Dict. List</b> →  → <b>Select dictionary</b> →  →  →
Selecting image download option	→ <b>ネット辞書</b> →  → <b>Show Image</b> →  → <b>Select option</b> → • For <b>Auto</b> , choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press .



Selecting search method	<p>辞書設定 → 辞書 → ネット辞書 → Select pull-down menu → Select dictionary → Set Search Method → Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not available when <b>すべて</b> or unsupported dictionary is selected.</li> </ul>
Selecting search area	<p>辞書設定 → 辞書 → ネット辞書 → Select pull-down menu → Select dictionary → Set Search Area → Select area</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not available when <b>すべて</b> or unsupported dictionary is selected.</li> </ul>
Opening Help	<p>辞書設定 → 辞書 → ネット辞書 → Select pull-down menu → Select dictionary → Help → Yes</p>

## Phone Book

### View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	<p>Start Here → Phone → Ph.Book Settings → See below</p> <p><b>Portrait Orientation</b> Vertical Display → List Only</p> <p><b>Landscape Orientation</b> Horizontal Display → Name+Email</p>
---------------------------------------	--

Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	<p>Start Here → Phone → Add New Entry → Picture → See below</p> <p><b>Assigning Images</b> Assign Picture → Select image</p> <p><b>Capturing Images</b> Take Picture → Frame image on Display</p>
	<p>Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers</p> <p>Phone → Ph.Book Settings → New Number Prompt → Incoming Call or Outgoing Call → Off</p>

### Phone Book Entry

Press **Enter** at the end to save entry. (At least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.)

Saving other information	<p>Start Here → Phone → Add New Entry → See below</p> <p><b>Address</b> Address: → Select item → Complete field → <b>Enter</b></p> <p><b>Office</b> Office: → Select item → Enter text → <b>Enter</b></p> <p><b>Homepage</b> Homepage: → Enter URL → Select type</p> <p><b>Note</b> Note: → Enter text</p> <p><b>Birthday</b> Birthday: → Enter date</p> <p><b>Location Information</b> Location Info.: → Enter Location Information</p>
--------------------------	--



Changing Small Light status	<p>Start Here → Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Light-Voice Call</i>: → See below</p> <p><b>Activating Small Light</b>  <i>Switch On/Off</i> → On or Link to Sound →</p> <p><b>Changing Light Color</b>  <i>Light Color</i> → Select color →</p>
	<p>Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message</i>: → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Select option → <i>Vibration Pattern</i> → Select pattern →</p>
	<p>Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message</i>: → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Select option → <i>Vibration Pattern</i> → Select pattern →</p>
<b>■ Editing Entries &amp; Categories</b>	
Editing Phone Book entries	<p>Select entry → Edit → Select item → Edit →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Edit Reading after editing names.</li> </ul>
Setting incoming mail ring time	<p>Select entry → Edit → <i>Tone-New Message</i>: → <i>Duration</i> → Enter time →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for compatible ringtones.</li> </ul>
Renaming Categories	<p>Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Edit Name → Enter name →</p>

Changing Category icons	<p>Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Change Icon → Select Pictogram →</p>
Changing Category order	<p>Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Select target location →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.</li> </ul>

**■ Using Entries**

Messaging via Phone Book	<p>Start Here → Select entry → See below</p> <p><b>Phone Numbers</b>          Select phone number → Create Message → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <p><b>Mail Addresses</b>          Select mail address → Complete message →</p>
	<p>Select entry → Select phone number → Deco. Call → Deco. Call File → Deco. Call Folder → Select file → Call Type → Voice Call or Video Call →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, follow onscreen prompt.</li> </ul>
	<p>Select entry → Select phone number → Call S! Circle Talk →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set Connection status to <i>Online</i> first.</li> </ul>
Placing international calls via Phone Book	<p>Select entry → Select phone number → Int'l Call → Select country →</p>



Using Location Information via Phone Book	<p>🔍 → Select entry → ⏪ → ⏩ → Settings → 📍</p> <p>🔍 → ⏪ → Set to Destination → ⏪</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
<b>Managing Entries</b>	
Deleting Phone Book entries	<p><b>One Entry</b></p> <p>🔍 → Select entry → ⏪ → Delete → ⏪ → Yes → ⏪</p> <p><b>All Entries</b></p> <p>📞 → Phone → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Delete All → ⏪ → Select entry type → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Yes → ⏪ → Enter Handset Code → ⏪</p>
Checking memory status	<p>📞 → Phone → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Memory Status → ⏪</p>
Copying Phone Book entries	<p><b>One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)</b></p> <p>🔍 → Select entry → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪</p> <p>📞 → Copy Entry to USIM → ⏪ → ⏪ → Yes → ⏪</p> <p><b>One Entry (USIM Card → Handset)</b></p> <p>🔍 → ⏪ → Ph.Book Settings → ⏪ → ⏪ → Select Phone Book → ⏪ → USIM Memory → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Select entry → ⏪ → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Copy Entry to Phone → ⏪</p> <p><b>All Entries</b></p> <p>🔍 → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪ → Copy All → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Select method → ⏪ → ⏪ → Yes → ⏪</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.</li> </ul>

Editing Categories on USIM Card	<p>Start Here → ⏪ → Phone → ⏪ → ⏪ → Set Category → ⏪</p> <p>📞 → ⏪ → ⏪ → Change to USIM → ⏪ → ⏪ → ⏪ → See below</p> <p><b>Renaming Categories</b></p> <p>Select Category → ⏪ → ⏪ → Edit Name → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Enter name → ⏪</p>
	<p><b>Changing Order</b></p> <p>Select Category → ⏪ → ⏪ → Select target location → ⏪</p>
	<p><b>Changing Icons</b></p> <p>Select Category → ⏪ → ⏪ → Change Icon → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Select Pictogram → ⏪</p>
	<p><b>Changing default storage media for new entries</b></p> <p>📞 → Phone → ⏪ → ⏪ → Ph.Book Settings → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Save New Entry → ⏪ → ⏪ → USIM Memory or Ask Each Time → ⏪</p>
Switching reference Phone Book	<p>📞 → Phone → ⏪ → ⏪ → Ph.Book Settings → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Select Phone Book → ⏪ → ⏪ → USIM Memory or Both → ⏪</p>
<b>Mode (Double Number)</b>	
First, activate Double Number.	
Changing modes of all entries at once	<p>📞 → Phone → ⏪ → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Change Mode(All) → ⏪ → ⏪ → Select mode → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Enter Handset Code → ⏪</p>
Changing modes of multiple entries	<p>🔍 → ⏪ → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪ → Multiple Selection → ⏪ → ⏪ → Select entry → ⏪ → ⏪ → (☐/☑) → ⏪</p> <p>⏪ → Change Mode → ⏪ → ⏪ → Select mode → ⏪ → ⏪</p>
Changing modes of entries by Category	<p>🔍 → Select Category → ⏪ → ⏪ → Manage Entries → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Change Mode(Category) → ⏪ → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <p>Select mode → ⏪ → ⏪ → Enter Handset Code → ⏪ → ⏪</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set search method to <b>By Category</b> first.</li> </ul>



#### Customized Screen

##### Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

#### Phone Book

##### Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls with image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

##### Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

##### Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



<b>Emergency Calls</b> .....	4-2
<b>Voice Calling</b> .....	4-3
<b>Video Calling</b> .....	4-5
<b>Decoration Call</b> .....	4-6
<b>Speed Dial</b> .....	4-7
<b>Call Log</b> .....	4-8
<b>Call Time</b> .....	4-9

<b>Call Barring</b> .....	4-10
Restrict Destinations .....	4-10
Reject Numbers .....	4-11
<b>Optional Services</b> .....	4-12
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	4-14
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	4-22

# 4

## Calling



## Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

943SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

### Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Bar Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	



# Voice Calling

## Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

### 1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

### 2 ➔ Call ends

#### Muting Ringer Temporarily

When a call arrives,

#### Earpiece Volume

During a call, or

#### After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears. Select **New Entry** or **New Detail** and press to save number; Phone Book entry window or entry search window opens, respectively.

## Placing a Voice Call

### 1 Enter phone number with area code

- To correct entry, use to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

### 2

- Wait for receiver to accept the call.



### 3 ➔ Call ends

#### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- After , ➔ **Select Line(Voice)** ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

## Placing an International Call

### 1 Enter phone number with area code ➔

### 2 Int'l Call ➔

### 3 Select country ➔ ➔

- Handset dials the number.

### 4 ➔ Call ends

#### Calling Unlisted Countries

- In , Enter Code ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔ ➔

## Advanced

- Rejecting calls
- Placing calls on hold
- Answering with Headphones
- Adjusting Earpiece Volume
- Sending/blocking Caller ID
- Muting Microphone
- Recording caller voice (And more on P.4-14 - 4-16)
- Answering calls by rotating Display from Cycloid to portrait position
- Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (And more on P.4-20 - 4-21)



## Placing Calls from Outside Japan

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand. See SoftBank Mobile Website for details: [http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global\\_services/](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/) Access roaming area/rate information or print it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.

**1** Enter phone number with area code ➔  ➔ *Int'l Call* ➔ 

**2** *日本(JPN)* ➔  ➔ 

- Handset dials the number.
- To call other countries, select the target country instead of *日本(JPN)*.

**3**  ➔ **Call ends**

### Calling SoftBank Handsets

- In **2**, always select *日本(JPN)*.

### Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

Enter phone number with area code

➔  ➔ *Dial to Your Stay* ➔ 

### Calls Overseas

- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

## Answer Phone

Caller messages are recorded on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used while handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
- To answer a call mid-recording, press .
  - No message will be recorded.

## Playing Messages

**1** 

**2** Select record ➔ 

- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

## Deleting All Records

After **1**,  ➔ *Delete All* ➔  ➔ 

Enter Handset Code ➔  ➔ *Yes* ➔ 

## Playback Operations

Volume Control	 or 
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	 ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ 
Loudspeaker On/Off	

## Canceling Answer Phone

**1**  (Long)

## Reactivating Answer Phone

 (Long)

## Advanced

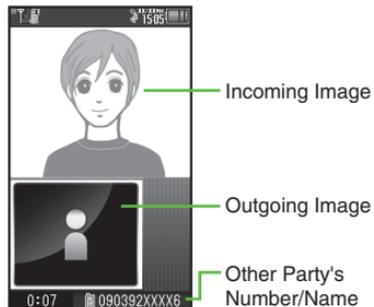
-   Recording caller messages
-  Changing ring time
-  Sampling outgoing message
-  Muting Earpiece (P.4-14)
-  Placing calls by entering country code directly
-  Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan (And more on P.4-15)



## Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

### Window Description



### Important Video Call Usage Notes

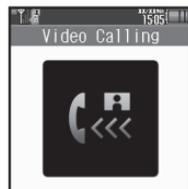
- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

### Advanced

- Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.4-14)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness
- Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls
- Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls
- Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.4-16 - 4-21)

### Answering a Video Call

Incoming call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 **to accept the call**
  - Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)
- 2 **Call ends**

### Answering with Camera Image

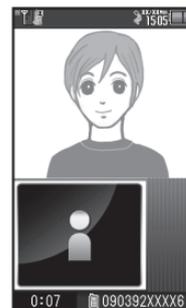
[Incoming Video Call Window]   
No

### Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	
Toggle Outgoing Image	
Open Help	<b>Help</b>

### Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number
- 2 Video Call



- Image appears when call is accepted.

- 3 **Call ends**

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, **Select Line(Video)**   
**Select line**



## Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.

### Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

### 1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

### 2 ➔ Call ends

- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

#### Note

- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

### Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

### 1 Enter phone number ➔

➔ *Deco. Call* ➔

### 2 *Deco. Call File* ➔

### 3 *Deco. Call Folder* ➔ ➔

**Select file** ➔

- To check selected file, press .

### 4

- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

### 5 ➔ Call ends

#### Placing Your First Decoration Call

- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt.
  - To show confirmation next time as well, press ( ).

#### Placing Decoration Video Calls

After , Call Type ➔ ➔ *Video Call* ➔ ➔ 4

### Advanced

- Creating Decoration Call files
- Editing Decoration Call files
- Saving received Decoration Call files
- Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
- Hiding incoming Decoration Call window
- Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files
- Showing options upon Decoration Call failure (P.4-16 - 4-17)



# Speed Dial

## Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** ➔
- 3 **<Empty>** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔
- 4 **Select phone number** ➔



- Select mail address prompt appears.  
To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press .  
(Omit .)

- 5 **Do not Assign** ➔

## 6 ➔ **Saved**

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat - .

### Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

### Canceling Speed Dial Entries

- In , select entry ➔ ➔ **Remove Selected or Remove All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔
- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

## Using Speed Dial

- 1 - (entry number)

- 2

### Placing Video Calls

- In , ➔ **Speed Video** ➔

### Placing Decoration Calls

- In , ➔ **Speed Deco. Call** ➔ ➔ **Deco. Call File** ➔ ➔ **Deco. Call Folder (or From Call Log)** ➔ ➔ **Select file (or record)** ➔ ➔
  - To create a new file, select **Create New File** in Deco. Call File menu.

### Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.



# Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 



- All records appear; press  to open Dialed, Dialed Ranking and then Received records.

2 **Select record**  

- Open Decoration Call record and press  for the corresponding file.

### When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

### Hiding Dialed Ranking

In   **Dialed or Dialed (Ranking)**

➔  ➔ **Hide Dialed Ranking** ➔ 

- To show Dialed Ranking again, follow these steps:

In   **Dialed** ➔ 

➔ **Show Dialed Ranking** ➔ 

➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 



## Advanced

-   Dialing from records (And more on P.4-17 - 4-18)

## Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔   
**Call**
  - 2 **Call Time/Data Counter** ➔ 
- Call Time

Call Timers

Data Counter

Call Time Counter

Minute Minder
- 3 **Call Timers** ➔ 
  - 4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** ➔ 

**Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer**  
 After 4,  ➔ Enter Handset Code  
 ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

### Advanced

  Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls  Checking accumulated data transmission volume  Resetting Data Counter (And more on P.4-18)



## Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Call Permitted List only.

### Limiting to Phone Book

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call Barring** →
- 2 **Restrict Destinations** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



Restrict Destinations Menu

- 3 **Restrict Phonebook** → → **Do** →

### When Restrict Phonebook is Do

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

### Limiting to Call Permitted List

#### Specifying Numbers

- 1 In Restrict Destinations menu, **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 2 **Call Permitted List** →
- 3 **<Empty>** →
- 4 **Enter phone number** →
  - Repeat 3 - 4 to add phone numbers.

#### Activating Call Permitted List

- 1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** →



### Advanced

- Designating Call Permitted List numbers from saved information
- Editing Call Permitted List (P.4-18)

## Reject Numbers

Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers or calls without Caller ID.

### Rejecting Specified Numbers

#### Specifying Numbers

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Call** → **Call Barring** →
- 2 **Reject Numbers** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



Reject Numbers Menu

### 3 **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 4 **Reject Numbers List** →
- 5 **<Empty>** →
- 6 **Enter phone number** →

- Repeat **5** - **6** to add phone numbers.

#### Activating Rejection

- 1 **In Specified Numbers menu, Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** →

### Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

- 1 **In Reject Numbers menu, Not registered Numbers** →

- 2 **Reject** →

#### Saved Numbers Containing P (Pause)

- Calls from the number before **P** are rejected.

### Rejecting Withheld Caller ID

Calls from public phones or with undisplayable Caller ID are also rejected.

- 1 **In Reject Numbers menu, Withheld Call** →
- 2 **Reject** →

### Advanced

- Designating numbers to reject from saved information
- Editing Reject Numbers List
- Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (P.4-19)



## Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

<b>Call Forwarding</b>	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
<b>Voicemail</b>	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touch tone phones
<b>Call Waiting*</b>	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
<b>Group Calling*</b>	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
<b>Caller ID</b>	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
<b>Call Barring</b>	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

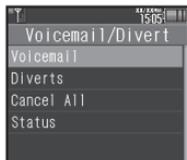
\*A separate contract is required.

### Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1 → **Settings** → →

2 **Voicemail/Divert** →



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts** →

4 **Select call type** →

5 **No Answer** →

6 **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** →

7 **Select phone number** →   
 • Omit 7 if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time** →

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In 6, **Always** → → 6 - 6

Entering Forwarding Number Directly  
 In 6, **Enter Number** → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select ring time** →

### Advanced

Checking service status (P.4-19)



## Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** → ● → **Activate** → ●
- 2 **No Answer** → ● → **Select ring time** → ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response  
In **e**, **Always** → ●

## Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 ● → **Settings** → ● → ● → **Call**
- 2 **out Missed Calls** → ● → ●
  - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

## Playing Messages

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** → ●
- 2 **Call Voicemail** → ●
  - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator  
In **e**, **Delete Icon** → ● → **Yes** → ●

## Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Cancel All** → ●
- 2 **Yes** → ●

## Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting ● Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ● Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ● Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.4-19 - 4-20)



## Receiving a Call

### ■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	<b>Voice Call</b> When a call arrives, ☎ → <b>Reject</b> → ●
	<b>Video Call</b> When a call arrives, 📺
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, ☎ • Press [Hold] to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, <b>Long Press Call Button</b> • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

### ■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives, ☎ → <b>Record Message</b> → ●
Changing ring time	● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> → ● → <b>Answer Time</b> → ● → <b>Enter time</b> → ●
Sampling outgoing message	● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> → ● → <b>Outgoing Message</b> → ● • Press [Stop] to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Answer Phone</b> → ● → <b>Volume</b> → ● → <b>Silent</b> → ●

## ■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	<b>Start Here</b> → ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> → ● → <b>Remote Monitor</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Saving Numbers from Phone Book</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> → ● → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> → ☎ → <b>Change</b> → ● → <b>From Phone Book</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Select phone number</b> → ● • To enter a phone number directly, select <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> and press ●.
	<b>Saving Numbers from Call Log</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> → ● → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> → ☎ → <b>Change</b> → ● → <b>From Call Log</b> → ● → <b>Select record</b> → ●
Editing Auto Answer List	<b>Start Here</b> → ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> → ● → <b>Remote Monitor</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>Auto Answer List</b> → ● → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Editing Numbers</b> <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Edit</b> → ●
Changing ring time	<b>Deleting Entries</b> <b>Select entry</b> → ☎ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●
	● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Video Call</b> → ● → <b>Remote Monitor</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>Answer Time</b> → ● → <b>Enter time</b> → ●



## Placing a Call

### Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → In Sound/Display menu, <b>Earpiece Volume</b> → ● → Adjust level → ●
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ☎ → <b>Hide My ID</b> or <b>Show My ID</b> → ●

### International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	<p>☎☎ (+ appears) → Enter country code → Enter phone number with area code → ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.</li> <li>• Pressing ☎☎ during a call does not enter +.</li> </ul>
Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan	<p><b>Start Here</b> Enter phone number with area code → ☎ → See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Prompts do not appear for numbers with country codes.</li> <li>• To disable Roaming Dial Assistant automatically after a call, press ☎ to check box next to <i>Don't use this tool again..</i></li> </ul> <p><b>Calling Japan (Landlines &amp; Mobiles)</b>  <b>Dial to Japan</b> → ● → ☎</p> <p><b>Calling Other Counties (Landlines &amp; Mobiles)</b>  <b>Dial to Other Country</b> → ● → Select country → ● → ☎</p>
Disabling Roaming Dial Assistant	<p>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ <b>Call</b> → <b>Int'l Calling</b> → ● → <b>Roaming Dial Assistant</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <b>Off</b>, handset dials the entered phone number as-is even while outside Japan.</li> </ul>

Saving frequently used international prefix	<p>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ <b>Call</b> → <b>Int'l Calling</b> → ● → <b>Int'l Prefix</b> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Enter prefix → ●</p>
Adding/changing/deleting country codes	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☎ <b>Call</b> → <b>Int'l Calling</b> → ● → <b>Country Codes</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Adding</b>          &lt;Empty&gt; → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter country code → ●</p> <p><b>Changing</b>          Select country → ● → <b>Change</b> → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter country code → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting</b>          Select country → ● → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>

## During a Call

### Voice Call & Video Call

Muting Microphone	<p><b>Voice Call</b>          During a call, ☐ (press again to cancel)</p> <p><b>Video Call</b>          During a call, ☎ → <b>Mute</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To cancel, select <b>Unmute</b>.</li> </ul>
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	<p><b>Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call</b>          During a call, ● → While message appears, ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To cancel, press ●.</li> </ul> <p><b>Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call</b>          During a call, ☐ (press again to activate)</p>
Switching sound output	<p>During a call, ☎ → <b>Transfer Audio</b> → ● → <b>To Phone</b> or <b>To Bluetooth</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>To Bluetooth</b>, select a device and press ●.</li> </ul>



Opening Phone Book	During a call,  → <b>Phone Book</b> →  → Select entry → • Press  twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	During a call,  → <b>Phone Book</b> →  →  → <b>Add New Entry</b> →  → <b>Complete fields</b> → • Press  to return to call window.
Placing calls on hold	During a call,  → <b>Hold</b> → • Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. • To resume Voice Calls, press , select <b>Retrieve</b> and press . • To resume Video Calls, press .

### ■ Voice Call Only

Recording caller voice	During a call,  → <b>Record Caller Voice</b> → → <b>Recording starts</b> →  → <b>Recording ends</b> • To play recorded messages, see P.4-4 "Playing Messages."
Opening messages	During a call,  → <b>Messaging</b> →  → <b>Select Messaging folder</b> →  → <b>Select folder</b> → → <b>Select message</b> → • Press  three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	During a call,  → <b>Messaging</b> →  → <b>Create Message or Create New SMS</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> →
Sending saved touch tones	During a call,  → <b>Touch-Tone Signal List</b> → → <b>Select entry</b> →
Sending touch tones via Phone Book	During a call,  → <b>Phone Book</b> →  → <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Send Push Tone</b> →  → <b>Select phone number</b> →

### ■ Video Call Only

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a call,  → <b>Exposure</b> →  →  → <b>Adjust level</b> → • Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
Disabling touch tone sending	During a call,  → <b>Disable DTMF</b> →

### ■ Decoration Call

Creating Decoration Call files	<b>Start Here</b> →  → <b>Data Folder</b> →  →  → <b>Decoration Call</b> →  → <b>Create New File</b> →  →  → <b>Text Input</b> →  → <b>Enter text</b> →  → <b>Images</b> → → <b>See below</b>
	<b>Using Still Images</b> <b>Picture</b> →  → <b>Pictures</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> →  →  → <b>Sounds</b> →  → <b>Select folder</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> →  → <b>Yes or No</b> →  →  → <b>Save here</b> →
	<b>Using Video</b> <b>Video</b> →  → <b>Videos</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> →  → <b>Yes or No</b> →  →  → <b>Save here</b> →
	<b>Using Flash® Animation</b> <b>Flash®</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> →  → <b>Yes or No</b> →  →  → <b>Save here</b> →



Editing Decoration Call files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → <b>Decoration Call</b> → ●</li> <li>● → <b>Select file</b> → ☰ → <b>Edit</b> → ● → <b>Edit</b> → ●</li> <li>☺ → <b>Save as New or Overwrite</b> → ●</li> <li>● For <b>Save as New</b>, select <b>Save here</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Saving received Decoration Call files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Save File</b> → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☺ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</li> <li>→ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☺ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → ● → <b>Play in Receiving</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → <b>Decoration Call</b> → ☰ → <b>Create New File</b> → ● → <b>Text Input</b> → ● → <b>Enter text</b> → ● → <b>Images</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Capturing Still Images</b></p> <p><b>Picture</b> → ● → <b>Take Picture</b> → ● → ● to shoot → ● → ☺ → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Recording Video</b></p> <p><b>Video</b> → ● → <b>Record Video</b> → ● → ● to start recording → ● to stop → <b>Save</b> → ● → <b>Yes or No</b> → ● → ☺ → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p>
Showing options upon Decoration Call failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Settings</b> → ● → ☺ → <b>Call</b> → <b>Decoration Call</b> → ● → <b>Notice</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</li> </ul>

## Call Log

Dialing from records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☺ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰</li> <li>● To place Video Calls, press ☰ instead of ☰, then select <b>Video Call</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Sending messages from records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Create Message</b> → ● → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → ☺</li> </ul>
Saving Phone Book entries from records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Save to Phone Book</b> → ● → <b>As New Entry</b> → ● → <b>Complete other fields</b> → ☺</li> <li>● To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
Opening Phone Book entries from records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Display Phone Book</b> → ●</li> <li>● Available when selected record (phone number) is saved in Phone Book.</li> </ul>
Placing Decoration Calls from records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Deco. Call</b> → ● → <b>Deco. Call File</b> → ● → <b>Select/create file</b> → ☰</li> <li>● For dialed Decoration Call records, alternatively, select <b>Redial Deco. Call</b> instead of <b>Deco. Call</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>



Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	→ Select record →  → Call S! Circle Talk →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set Connection status to <b>Online</b> first.</li> </ul>
Deleting records	<b>One Record</b> → Select record →  → Delete (Delete Item in Dialed Ranking) →  → Yes →
	<b>All Records</b> →  → Delete All (Reset in Dialed Ranking) →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Yes →
Hiding Dialed Ranking	→ Phone →  → Call Log Setting →  → Hide Dialed Ranking → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Handset Code is required to re-select <b>Show Dialed Ranking</b>.</li> </ul>

## Call Time & Data Communication

### Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	→ Settings →  → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter →  → Minute Minder →  → On →
Hiding Call Time during calls	→ Settings →  → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter →  → Call Time Counter →  → Off →
Resetting Call Timers	→ Settings →  → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter →  → Call Timers →  → Clear Timers →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Yes →

### Data Communication

Checking accumulated data transmission volume	→ Settings →  → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter →  → Data Counter →  → All Data →
Resetting Data Counter	→ Settings →  → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter →  → Data Counter →  → Clear Counter →  → Yes →

### Restrict Destinations

Designating Call Permitted List numbers from saved information	<b>Start Here</b> →  → Settings →  → Call → Call Barring →  → Restrict Destinations →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Specified Numbers →  → Call Permitted List →  → <Empty> →  → See below
	<b>From Phone Book</b> Ph.Book List →  → Select entry →  → Select phone number →
	<b>From Call Log Records</b> From Call Log →  → Select record →
Editing Call Permitted List	<b>From S! Friend's Status Member List</b> From Friend's Status →  → Select member →
	<b>Start Here</b> →  → Settings →  → Call → Call Barring →  → Restrict Destinations →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Specified Numbers →  → Call Permitted List →  → See below
	<b>Editing Numbers</b> Select number/name →  → Edit →
	<b>Deleting Numbers</b> Select number/name →  → Delete →  → Yes →



## Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Reject Numbers List → &lt;Empty&gt; → See below</p> <p><b>From Phone Book</b> Ph.Book List → Select entry → Select phone number</p> <p><b>From Call Log Records</b> From Call Log → Select record</p> <p><b>From S! Friend's Status Member List</b> From Friend's Status → Select member</p>
	<p><b>Editing Reject Numbers List</b></p> <p><b>Start Here</b> → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Reject Numbers List → See below</p> <p><b>Editing Numbers</b> Select number/name → Edit</p> <p><b>Deleting Numbers</b> Select number/name → Delete → Yes</p>
	<p><b>Excluding rejected calls from Call Log</b> Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Record on Call Log → Do not Record</p>

## Optional Services

## All Services

Checking service status	<p>Settings → Call → Select service → Status</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for <b>Voicemail/Divert</b>, <b>Show My Number</b>, <b>Call Barring</b> and <b>Call Waiting</b>.</li> <li>For <b>Call Barring</b>, select restriction and press.</li> </ul>
-------------------------	---

## Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	<p>Settings → Call → Call Waiting → On</p>
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	<p><b>A tone sounds during a Voice Call</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press to switch between lines.</li> <li>Press to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.</li> </ul>

## Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a call	<p><b>During a Voice Call, enter phone number</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long Press to select a number from Call Log records.</li> </ul>
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	<p><b>During a Voice Call</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press to switch between lines.</li> </ul>
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	<p><b>While switching between lines</b>, → <b>Group Calling</b> → <b>Conference All</b></p>
Switching to private conversation	<p><b>During Group Calling, select number/name</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Private</li> </ul>



## Call Barring

Changing Network Password	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☎ Call → Call Barring → ● → Change NW Password → ● → Enter current Network Password → ● → Enter new Network Password → ● → Re-enter new Network Password → ●</p>
Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	<p>[Start Here] ● → Settings → ● → ☎ Call → Call Barring → ● → Bar Outgoing Calls → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Setting Restriction</b> Select restriction → ● → On → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted.</li> <li>● Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected.</li> <li>● Following restrictions are available:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls</li> <li>■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls</li> <li>■ Local &amp; Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Canceling All Restrictions</b> Cancel All → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p>

Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	<p>[Start Here] ● → Settings → ● → ☎ Call → Call Barring → ● → Bar Incoming Calls → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Setting Restriction</b> Select restriction → ● → On → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.</li> <li>● Incoming S! Circle Talk requests are not affected.</li> <li>● Following restrictions are available:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls</li> <li>■ Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Canceling All Restrictions</b> Cancel All → ● → Enter Network Password → ●</p>
<h2>Caller ID</h2>	
Showing/hiding Caller ID	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☎ Call → Show My Number → ● → On or Off → ●</p>
<h2>Settings</h2>	
<h2>Display Rotation</h2>	
Answering calls by rotating Display from Cycloid to portrait position	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☎ Phone/☎ → Display Rotation → ● → Rotate Back to → ● → Answer Calls → ●</p>



## Voice Call

<p>Answering calls automatically when using Headphones</p>	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Auto Answer</i> ● → ● → Enter Handset Code ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Activating Auto Answer</b>  <i>Switch On/Off</i> ● → ● → <i>On</i> ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Ring Time</b>  <i>Answer Time</i> ● → ● → Enter time ● → ●</p>
<p>Saving frequently used touch tones</p>	<p>● → <i>Phone</i> ● → ● → <i>Touch-Tone Signal List</i> ● → ● → Select number ● → ● → Enter name ● → ● → Enter digits ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Send saved touch tones from Voice Call window via Options menu.</li> </ul>
<p>Saving touch tones for White Office</p>	<p>● → <i>Phone</i> ● → ● → <i>Touch-Tone Signal List</i> ● → ● → <i>Change to White Office Tone</i> ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch tones for White Office are saved to 1 - 5.</li> <li>When touch tones are already saved in 1 - 5, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
<p>Deleting touch tones</p>	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Phone</i> ● → ● → <i>Touch-Tone Signal List</i> ● → ● → See below</p> <p><b>One Entry</b>  Select entry ● → ● → <i>Delete</i> ● → ● → <b>Yes</b> ● → ●</p> <p><b>All Entries</b>  ● → <i>Reset</i> ● → ● → Enter Handset Code ● → ● → <b>Yes</b> ● → ●</p>

## Video Call

<p>Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Camera Picture</i> ● → ● → <i>Default Image</i> ● → ● → <i>External Camera</i> ● → ●</p>
<p>Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Loudspeaker</i> ● → ● → <i>Off</i> ● → ●</p>
<p>Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Mute Microphone</i> ● → ● → <i>On</i> ● → ●</p>
<p>Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Camera Picture</i> ● → ● → <i>Alternative Image</i> ● → ● → Select folder ● → ● → Select file ● → ● → ●</p>
<p>Changing Incoming/Outgoing Image quality</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture</i> ● → ● → Select option ● → ●</p>
<p>Setting image that is sent while call is on hold</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Hold Guidance Pict</i> ● → ● → Select folder ● → ● → Select file ● → ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.</li> </ul>
<p>Setting Backlight status</p>	<p>● → <i>Settings</i> ● → ● → <i>Call</i> ● → <i>Video Call</i> ● → ● → <i>Backlight</i> ● → ● → Select option ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Setting</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>



## Receiving a Call

### ? Cannot use Answer Phone or Record Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds of recording capacity remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

## Placing a Call

### ? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

### ? Cannot place call

- Cancel Keypad Lock, Function Lock and Offline Mode, if active.

### ? Call won't connect

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range (*out* appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

## During a Call

### ? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

### ? Camera image switches to Alternative Image during Video Calls

- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

### ? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

### ? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

### ? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

### ? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.4-3).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (P.4-15) to *To Phone*.



## Other

**Call Time (in *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls*) seems incorrect**

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

**Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding**

- Does the number start with **1, 00, 0120** or **0990**? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



<b>Messaging</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
Basics .....	5-2
Customizing Handset Address .....	5-3
<b>Sending Messages</b> .....	<b>5-4</b>
Sending S! Mail .....	5-4
Sending Graphic Mail .....	5-6
Sending SMS.....	5-9
Restricting Outgoing Messages.....	5-10
<b>Incoming Messages</b> .....	<b>5-11</b>
Opening & Replying.....	5-11
Customizing S! Mail Retrieval.....	5-13
<b>Handling Messages</b> .....	<b>5-14</b>
Managing & Using Messages.....	5-14
Sorting Messages.....	5-16

<b>Chat Folders</b> .....	<b>5-17</b>
Using Chat Folders.....	5-17
<b>Mail Groups</b> .....	<b>5-18</b>
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail .....	5-18
<b>PC Mail</b> .....	<b>5-19</b>
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>5-22</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>5-38</b>

# 5

## Messaging



## Basics

Use the following messaging services.

### SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

### S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach media files, etc.

#### Large Size Messages

Transmit messages of up to 2 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

### PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 943SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

### Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
<b>SMS</b>	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
<b>S! Mail</b>	Available	Available	Available	Available
<b>PC Mail</b>	Available	Available	Available	Available

\*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-23).

### Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

### Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (P.5-33).



## Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumeric before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-23).

### Changing Address

1  → **Settings** → 

2 **Address Settings** → 

- Handset connects to the Internet. Select **English** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

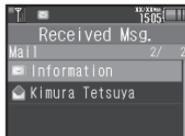
### Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank Mobile sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** → 



2 **Information** → 

3 **Yes** → 



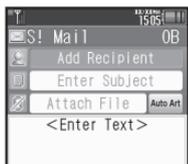
4 



## Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

- 1 ➔ **Create Message** ➔   
 When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail** and press .



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 **Select recipient field** ➔
- 3 **Phone Book** ➔
- 4 **Select entry** ➔
- 5 **Select number or mail address** ➔

- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

- 6 **Select subject field** ➔ ➔ ➔   
 **Enter subject** ➔

- 7 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

- 8 **Enter message** ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

- 9 ➔ **Transmission starts**   
 • To cancel, press during transmission.

### Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

### Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

### Previewing Outgoing Message

- After , ➔ **Preview Message** ➔

### Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- [S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ **Switch Line** ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

### Converting to Graphic Mail

- After , **Auto Art** ➔ ➔ **Select decoration type** ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔   
 ■ To cancel conversion, follow these steps before :

- ➔ **Cancel Arrangement** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

### Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Inserting signature automatically
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.5-22)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on P.5-23 - 5-24)
- Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on P.5-33)



## Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field ➔ ●
- 2 **Picture** ➔ ● ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ●
- 3 **Select file** ➔ ●



Attach File Window

- 4 ● ➔ **Transmission starts**

## Attaching Non-Image Files

- In ●, select a folder other than **Picture** and press ●, then select a file.

### Attaching Multiple Files

After ●, **Attach (1)** ➔ ● ➔ **Attach**

**File** ➔ ● ➔ **From** ●

- **X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

## Auto Image Resize

Large images may be automatically reduced to approximately 400 - 500 KB by default.

Change resize setting via Picture Auto Resize (P.5-35).

## If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 2 MB)

- Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

## Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ● ➔ **Feeling Settings** ➔ ●
- 2 Select category, e.g., **Happy/Glad** ➔ ●
- 3 Select item, e.g., **I Love You** ➔ ●



- 4 ● ➔ **Transmission starts**

## Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Select Pictogram**, e.g., ● ➔ ● ➔ ●

## Advanced

- Changing attached image size ● Set Auto Play File (And more on P.5-24)
- Disabling image auto-resize ● Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size (And more on P.5-35)



## Sending Graphic Mail

### Basic Procedure

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size
- Insert images
- Scroll text

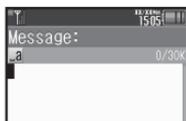
5

Messaging

1 → **Create Message** →

2 **Select/enter recipient and subject (P.5-4)**

3 **Select message text field** →



Text Entry Window

4 **(Long)**



Graphic Mail Window

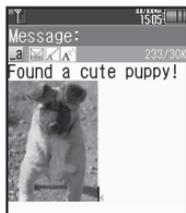
5 **SIZE** →

6 **Select size** → → **Enter text**



7 → **IMAGE** → → **Select folder** → → **Select file** →

8 **Select target location** →



9 → **EFFECT** →

10 **Scrolling** →

11 **Select direction** → → **Enter text**

12 → → **Transmission starts**

### Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] **UNDO** →

Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings  
[Graphic Mail Window] **CANCEL** → → **Yes** →

### Saving as Templates

After 11, → → **Save as Template** → → **Enter name** → → **Save here** →

- Only the message text is saved.

### Advanced

- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.5-24 - 5-25)



## Using My Pictograms

My Pictograms are grouped by category; add or rename categories as needed. Source files are saved in Data Folder (My Pictograms).

### 1 In Graphic Mail window, **MY PICT** → ●



- My Pictogram List appears. (Log appears if My Pictogram has been used.)
- Press **[H.UD]** or **[X.UD]** to open next or previous Category.

### 2 ●



### 3 Select Category → ●



My Pictogram List

- Press **[Y]** or **[X]** to open next or previous page.

### 4 Select file → ● → **[BASE]**

- List closes; enter text, add other decorative effects, etc.

### 5 Complete message → ● → **[Y]** → **Transmission starts**

## Moving/Copying My Pictograms

[My Pictogram List] Select file → **[Y]**  
 (Long) → **Move or Copy** → ● →  
 Press **[H.UD]** or **[X.UD]** to select Category  
 → **Select target location** → ●

- My Pictograms can also be moved/copied within the same Category.

## Deleting My Pictograms

[My Pictogram List] Select file → **[Y]**  
 (Long) → **Delete** → ● → **Yes** → ●  
 ■ Source files in Data Folder will be deleted.

## Checking My Pictograms Individually

[My Pictogram List] Select file → **[Y]**  
 (Long) → **Preview** → ●  
 ■ To return, press **[BASE]**.

## Opening Data Folder (My Pictograms)

[My Pictogram List] Select file → **[Y]**  
 (Long) → **Access to Data Folder** → ●

## Clearing Entry Log

- Open Log then follow these steps:  
**Select file** → **[Y]** (Long) → **Delete This Log** → ● → **Yes** → ●

## Advanced

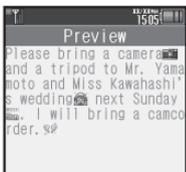
- Creating Categories
- Renaming Categories
- Changing Category order
- Deleting Categories (P.5-25)



### Converting from S! Mail

Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail easily.

- 1 In text entry window, enter message →  (Long)
- 2 Select decoration type → 
  -  (Next) or  (Prev.)



- 3 
- 4  →  → **Transmission starts**

#### Canceling Conversion

After 3,  → **Cancel Arrangement**

→  → **Yes** →  → 

### Using Templates

Create Graphic Mail from templates.

- 1  → **Templates** → 
- 2 **Select template** → 
- 3 **Complete message** →  → **Transmission starts**

#### Template Size

- Template size may change when used for creating messages.

#### Opening Templates from Text Entry Window (S! Mail)

[Text Entry Window]  → **Launch Template** →  → **Select template** → 

- If message text has already been entered, follow onscreen prompt to insert it.



### Advanced

-   Using custom decoration type (P.5-25)

## Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ➔ **Create New SMS** ➔



SMS Composition Window

2 **Select recipient field** ➔

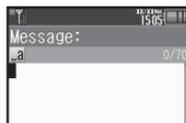
3 **Phone Book** ➔

4 **Select entry** ➔

5 **Select number** ➔

- Omit if only one number is saved.

6 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

7 **Enter message** ➔



SMS Composition Window

8 ➔ **Transmission starts**

### Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

### Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

### When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:

**Yes** ➔

### Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[SMS Composition Window] ➔

**Switch Line** ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

### Entering Pictograms Automatically

After , **Auto Art** ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔

### Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.5-22)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on P.5-23 - 5-24)
- Changing Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (P.5-37)



## Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/ addresses saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

### Limiting to Phone Book

- 1  → **Settings** → 
- 2 **General Settings** →  → **Send/Compose** → 
- 3 **Restrictions Setting** →  → **Enter Handset Code** → 



Set Restrict Mail Menu

- 4 **Phonebook Entries** →  → **On** → 

#### When Phonebook Entries is On

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

### Limiting to Permitted List

#### Specifying Mail Addresses

- 1 In Set Restrict Mail menu, **Individual Address** → 



Individual Address Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** → 
- 3 **<Empty>** → 
- 4 **Select method** →  → **Select/enter address** → 
  - Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

#### Activating Permitted List

- 1 In Individual Address menu, **Switch On/Off** → 
- 2 **On** → 



### Advanced

-   Deleting Permitted List entries (P.5-33)

## Opening & Replying

### Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.  
See P.5-21 to receive PC Mail.



#### Important Message Retrieval Notes

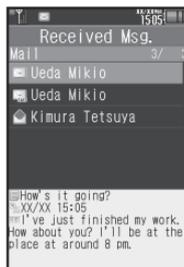
- By default, if message size is around 1 MB or less, the complete message including attachments is retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval outside Japan may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Auto Settings to **Off**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

#### Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:

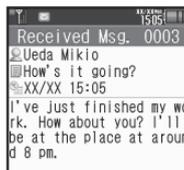
**Delivery Report** → → **Select message with report** → →

### 1 Message →



Message List

### 2 Select message →



- Message window opens.

#### Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

#### Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

#### Messages with Quiz

##### Enter or select answer →

- Message opens when the correct answer is entered or selected.

#### Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is entered as the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

#### Mail Notice

- Depending on the setting (e.g., Auto Settings is **Off**), Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
  - The message was sent to multiple recipients
  - Files are attached to the message
- If message size exceeds 1 MB, Server sends only initial portion of message text regardless of Auto Settings status. (Approximate size appears in message text.)

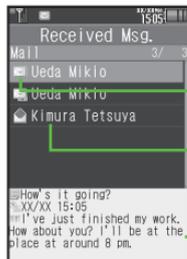
### Advanced

- Accessing new mail out of Standby
- Retrieving new S! Mail manually
- Retrieving remaining portions (And more on P.5-26)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders
- Changing ringtone settings
- Limiting incoming S! Mail message size (And more on P.5-34 - 5-35)



## Window Description

## Message List



Message Type/Status  
(see below)

Sender or Recipient

Message Text

## Message Type/Status

	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

"SMS" or "PC" appears accordingly on indicators.

## Advanced

- Saving attachments to Data Folder ● Saving to Phone Book ● Using linked info ● Looking up message text words in dictionaries ● Jumping to message top/bottom ● Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers ● Selecting mail type/quote option ● Opening received message for reference ● Replying quickly using fixed text ● Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.5-26 - 5-28)
- Selecting quote option (P.5-33)

## Message Window



Sender or Recipient

Subject (except for SMS)

Received or  
Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Press **[X-2]** to open next (newer) message,  
or **[#-3]** to open previous (older) one.

## Changing Font Size

[Message Window] **[3-4]** (Long) to  
enlarge or **[1-2]** (Long) to reduce

## When Rotating Display to Cycloid Position

- Send reply confirmation appears.
  - Choose **Yes** and press to open Mail Composition window. (Original message appears on the left.)
  - Choose **No** and press to close confirmation. (Message window remains in landscape orientation.)
- Press while confirmation appears to make selection the default setting hereafter.

## Replying to Messages

- 1** In message window,
  - Mail Composition window opens.
  - Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).
- 2** Complete message 

Transmission starts

## Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After **1**, *To Sender or Reply All*

## Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying in Kanji (Hiragana) mode, this dictionary prioritizes original message words (katakana or alphanumerics) in suggestion list.

## Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

## When Rotating Display to Cycloid Position

- Original message appears on the right.



## Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

### Retrieving Messages Manually

- 1  → **Settings** → ●
- 2 **S! Mail Settings** → ●
- 3 **Message DL** → ●



Message DL Menu

- 4 **Auto Settings** → ●

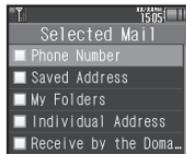
- 5 **Off** → ●

**Retrieving Complete S! Mail Automatically when Approximate Size is 300 KB or Less**  
In 5, **On (Up to 300KB)** → ●

### Restricting Automatic Retrieval

#### By Sender Type

- 1 In **Message DL** menu, **Condition (Auto)** → ●
- 2 **Selected Mail** → 



Selected Mail Menu

- 3 **Select item** → ● (□/☑) → 

#### By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

- 1 In **Selected Mail** menu, **Individual Address** → 
- 2 **Select blank entry** → ●
- 3 **Select method** → ● → **Select/enter address** → ●
  - Repeat 2 - 3 to add mail addresses.
- 4 
- 5 ● (☑) → 

#### Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)

- In 1, **Receive by the Domain** → 
- **Select blank entry** → ● → **Direct Entry** → ● → **Enter domain** → ● →  → 5

### Advanced

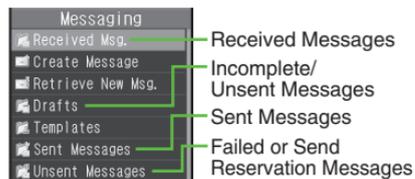
-  ● Retrieving remaining portions (P.5-26)
- Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically ● Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (P.5-35)



## Managing & Using Messages

### Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



### Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

### Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:



### When Failed Message is Saved

- A reminder message appears upon opening Messaging menu.

### Checking Messages



Folder List

- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press .



Message List



Message Window

### Protecting Messages



### Canceling Protection



### Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages ● Deleting messages ● Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list (And more on P.5-29 - 5-30)
- Forwarding messages ● Sending from Drafts ● Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on P.5-32)
- Changing message window scroll unit ● Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages ● Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on P.5-33)



## Moving Messages to Spam Folder

- 1 In message list, select message ➔ 
  - For PC Mail, skip ahead to 3.
- 2 Spam Measures Operation ➔ 
- 3 Go to Spam Measures Folder. ➔ 
  - If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** or **No** and press . Choose **Yes** to proceed with Sort Spam Mail settings; follow onscreen instructions.

## Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2  ➔ **Search** ➔ 
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔ 
- 4 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔ 

### Searching by Folder

In 2, select folder ➔  ➔ **Search** ➔  ➔ **Search Folder** ➔  ➔ 4

### Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.  
[Message Window]  ➔ **Search Text** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔ 
  - Press  or  to jump to next/previous search result.

## Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within. Chat Folders are not affected.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select folder** ➔ 
- 3 **Set Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔  ➔ 

### Accessing Secret Folders

After 1,  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Advanced

-   Moving messages manually
-  Renaming folders
-  Deleting folders
-  Deleting Spam Folder messages
-  Adding folders
-  Moving folders
-  Changing status of all messages within folders to read
-  Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders
-  Canceling Secret (P.5-30)



## Sorting Messages

### Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ ●
- 2 Select target folder ➔ 
- 3 **My Folders** ➔ ● ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ●



- 4 **Sender (Recipient for Sent Messages)** ➔ ●
- 5 Select method ➔ ● ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔ ●
- 6  ➔ **Saved**

### Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)

In  **Sender(Domain)**  
(**Recipient(Domain)** for Sent Messages) ➔ ● ➔ **Direct Entry**  
➔ ● ➔ Enter domain ➔ ● ➔ 

### Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

In  **Subject** ➔ ● ➔ Enter text  
➔ ● ➔ 

### Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:  
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **General Settings** ➔ ●
- 2 **Sort Spam Mail** ➔ ●
- 3 Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

- 4 **Unregistered(Mobile)** ➔ ●

- 5  ➔ ●

**Exempting Messages from Filtering After  Permitted List(Common)** ➔  ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ● ➔ Select key ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address/subject ➔ ● ➔  ➔ ●  ➔ 

### When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

### Advanced

-  ● Re-sorting messages ● Sorting spam by setting keys ● Editing/deleting sort keys (P.5-31)



## Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets. To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

### Saving Members

- 1  ➔ **Chat Folder** ➔ 



Chat Folder List

- 2 **Select folder** ➔ 
- 3 **Add New Member** ➔ 
- 4 **Select blank entry** ➔ 
  - Select saved member to edit number/address.
- 5 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔ 
  - Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

- 6  ➔ **Saved**

### Changing Members

In 4, select member ➔  ➔

**Change Member** ➔  ➔ **From** 5

### Deleting Members

In 4, select member ➔  ➔ **Delete**

➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔ 5

### Opening Chat Folders

- 1 **In Chat Folder list, select folder** ➔ 
- 2 **Select message** ➔ 

### Advanced

-   Deleting folders  Deleting all messages  Resetting Chat Folders (P.5-31)



## Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time. First, save target recipients to Phone Book.

1 → **Settings** →

2 **Mail Groups** →



Mail Group Entry Window

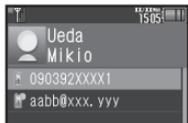
3 **<Add New Group>** → →

Enter name →

4 **Select Group** →

5 **<Assign New Entry>** →

→ **Select entry** →



6 **Select number or mail address** →



- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat - to add members.

7 → **Saved**

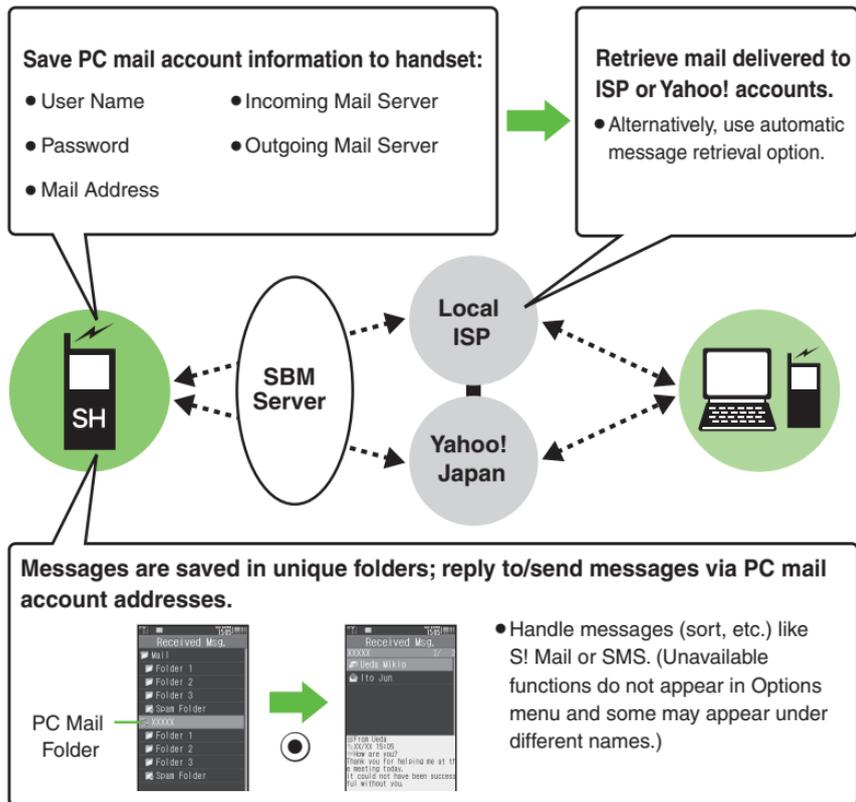


### Advanced

- Renaming Mail Groups
- Deleting Mail Groups/Group members
- Changing Mail Group members (P.5-31)

## PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



### Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high packet transmission fees; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.



## PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.

### Mandatory Items for Retrieval

User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

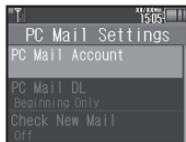
### Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

### Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press .

-  → **Settings** →  → **PC Mail Settings** → 



-  **PC Mail Account** → 

-  **<Empty>** → 

-  **Account Name** →  → **Enter name** → 

-  **Set Receiving** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** →  → 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.

-  **Set Sending** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** → 

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

-  →  → 

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses

- In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** →  → **Yes or No** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose **No** to create a new account.

### Editing Accounts

- In , **select account** →  → **From** 

### Deleting Accounts

- In , **select account** →  → **Yes** → 

### Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

- In , **Set Sending** →  → **Sender Auth.** →  → **SMTP Auth.** →  → **User Name** →  → **Enter name** →  → **Password** →  → **Enter password** →  →  →  → 

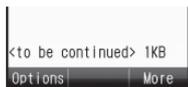


## Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.



- 2 Select PC Mail folder
- 3 Select message



Message Window

- Press to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

### Deleting Messages

[Message List] Select message  
 → Delete → Select option  
 → Yes

### Retrieving Messages by Account

After 1, select account

## Checking Received PC Mail

- 1 → **Received Msg.** → → **Select folder** →
  - Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.
- 2 **Select message** →
  - Message window opens.

## Replying to PC Mail

- 1 **In message window,**
  - PC Mail Composition window opens.
  - Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).
- 2 **Complete message** → → **Transmission starts**

### Replying without Quoting Original Message Text

[Message Window] → **Reply-To Addr.** → → **PC Mail** → → **Complete message** →

### Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

[PC Mail Composition Window] Select recipient field → **From:** → → **Select account** →

## Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

- 1 → **Create Message** →
- 2 **Select PC Mail Account** →
- 3 **Complete message** → → **Transmission starts**

### Converting to S! Mail

After , → **Convert to S! Mail** → → **Yes** →

#### Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

## Advanced

- Retrieving complete PC Mail messages
- Retrieving new messages automatically
- Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder
- Disabling automatic word wrap
- Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval
- Restricting complete message retrieval by size (P.5-36 - 5-37)



## Creating/Sending Messages

### Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ●
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Add Recipient → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● →
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select recipient →  → Select status → ● → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.</li> </ul>

Using Speed Dial/Mail list	<p><b>Saving Recipients</b></p> → Settings → ● → Speed Dial/Mail → ● → <Empty> → ● → Select entry → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → Do not Assign → ● →
----------------------------	---

Creating Messages	In Standby,  -   (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press .</li> </ul>
-------------------	--

Editing/deleting recipients	<b>Start Here</b> In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → See below
	<b>Editing Recipients</b> Select recipient → ● → Edit → ● →
	<b>Deleting a Recipient</b> Select recipient →  → Delete → ● →
	<b>Deleting All Recipients</b> Select recipient →  → Delete All → ● → Yes → ● →

Editing Speed Dial/Mail list	<b>Start Here</b> → Settings → ● → Speed Dial/Mail → ● → See below
	<b>Editing Entries</b> Select entry →  → Change → ● → Select number/address → ● → Select new number/address → ● →
	<b>Canceling Entries</b> Select entry →  → Remove Selected → ● → Yes → ●
	<b>Canceling All Entries</b> → Remove All → ● → Yes → ●

### Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	→ Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ● → Signature → ● → Edit → ● → Enter signature → ● → Auto Insert → ● → On → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies.</li> <li>Not available for SMS.</li> </ul>
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window,  → Insert/Font Size → ● → Signature → ●
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window,  → Call ASCII Art → ● → Select entry → ●
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window,  → Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail → ● → Yes → ●



## ■ Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message,  → <i>Save to Drafts</i> → ●
Sending automatically later	<b>Start Here</b> After completing message,  → <i>Send Reservation</i> → ● → See below
	<b>Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network</b> → ● → Yes → ●
Canceling sent S! Mail	<b>Designating Send Date/Time (within 30 days)</b> Date & Time → ● → Enter date/time → ● → Yes → ●
	→ <i>Sent Messages</i> → ● → Select folder → ● → Select message →  → <i>Set Sent Cancel</i> → ● → Yes → ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

## ■ Messaging Settings

- For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
- For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Delivery Report</i> → ● → On → ● ● Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. ● Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ■ : Delivered, : Unknown, : Failed ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Priority</i> → ● → Select priority → ●
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set Auto Delete</i> → ● → On → ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Reply Request</i> → ● → On → ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Forward NG or Delete NG</i> → ● → On → ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	<b>Start Here</b> In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Quiz</i> → ● → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → ● → On → ● → See below ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
	<b>Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)</b> Select question → ● → <i>Selection</i> → ● → Select number → ● → Enter/edit option → ● → Enter/edit all options → Select answer →  →  → ● May be unavailable for some questions.
	<b>Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)</b> Select question → ● → <i>Match Characters</i> → ● → Enter answer → ● → ● May be unavailable for some questions.
	<b>Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)</b> <Create Original> → ● → Enter question → ● → <i>Selection</i> → ● → Select number → ● → Enter option → ● → Complete entry → Select answer →  →  →
Editing assigned Quiz	<b>Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)</b> <Create Original> → ● → Enter question → ● → <i>Match Characters</i> → ● → Enter answer → ● →
	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> → ● → <i>Quiz</i> → ● → <i>Edit Question</i> → ● → Edit question/options/answer →  →  again after editing options) ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.



Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail messages	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> →  → <i>Create Msg. Size</i> →  → <i>300KB</i> →
Designating/editing reply-to address	<small>[Start Here]</small> In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> →  → <i>Reply to Settings</i> →  → See below
	<b>Designating</b> <i>Switch On/Off</i> →  → <i>On</i> →  → <i>Select method</i> →  → <i>Select/enter address</i> →
	<b>Editing Recipients</b> <i>Edit Address</i> →  → <i>Edit</i> →
Changing Server sent message storage limit	In Mail Composition window,  → <i>Messaging Settings</i> →  → <i>Expiry Time</i> →  → <i>Select option</i> → • Available for SMS only.

### ■ Attachments

Changing attached image size	<i>Select attached file</i> →  → <i>Resize Picture</i> →  → <i>Select size</i> → • May be unavailable for some images.
	<small>[Start Here]</small> In Mail Composition window, select attachment field →  → See below
	<b>Still Images</b> <i>Picture</i> →  → <i>Take Picture</i> →  →  →  to shoot →
	<b>Video</b> <i>Video</i> →  → <i>Record Video</i> →  →  →  to start recording →  to stop → <i>Accept</i> →  → <i>Select storage media</i> →
	<b>Sounds</b> <i>Sound</i> →  → <i>Record Voice</i> →  →  →  to start recording →  to stop → <i>Accept</i> →  → <i>Select storage media</i> →
Capturing/recording and attaching	

Set Auto Play File	<i>Select attached file</i> →  → <i>Set Auto Play File</i> →  → <i>Switch On/Off</i> →  → <i>On</i> →  → <i>Enter Message</i> →  → <i>Enter comment</i> → →  → • Not available for PC Mail.
--------------------	---

### ■ Graphic Mail (General)

Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window,  (Long) →  → <i>Select start point</i> →  → <i>Highlight text range</i> →  → <i>COLOR, SIZE</i> or <i>EFFECT</i> →  → <i>Set</i> →
Changing text color	In text entry window,  (Long) → <i>COLOR</i> →  → <i>Select color</i> →  → <i>Enter text</i>
Changing background color	In text entry window,  (Long) → <i>BG</i> →  → <i>Select color</i> →
	<small>[Start Here]</small> In text entry window,  (Long) → <i>INSERT</i> →  → See below
	<b>Inserting</b> <i>BGM Sound</i> →  → <i>Select folder</i> →  → <i>Select file</i> →
	<b>Deleting</b> <i>Delete BGM</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window,  (Long) → <i>INSERT</i> →  → <i>Flash</i> →  → <i>Select file</i> →
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file,  → <i>Preview</i> → • When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.



Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.</li> </ul>
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>INSERT</b> →  → <b>Line</b> → 
Flashing text	<b>Start Here</b> In text entry window,  (Long) → See below
	<b>Flashing</b> <b>EFFECT</b> →  → <b>Blink</b> →  → <b>Blink On</b> →  → Enter text
	<b>Canceling</b>  → Select start point →  → Highlight text range →  → <b>EFFECT</b> →  → <b>Blink</b> →  <b>Blink Off</b> → 
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>EFFECT</b> →  → <b>Alignment</b> →  → Select option →  → Enter text
Using custom decoration type	<b>Start Here</b> In text entry window, enter message →  (Long) → <b>Original</b> →  → See below
	<b>Disabling My Pictograms</b> <b>Pictograms Type</b> →  → <b>Pictograms</b> →   (Next) or  (Prev.) → 
	<b>Inserting Pictograms/My Pictograms at the End of Text Only</b> <b>Insert Pictograms Position</b> →  → <b>Page Bottom</b> →  →  (Next) or  (Prev.) → 
	<b>Changing Pictogram/My Pictogram Quantity</b> <b>Insert Pictograms Volume</b> →  → Select option →  →  (Next) or  (Prev.) → 
	<b>Enabling/Disabling Text Color/Size &amp; Background Color Auto Change</b> <b>Change Font Color, Change Font Size or Change Background Color</b> →  → <b>Do or Do not</b> →  →  (Next) or  (Prev.) → 

## ■ Graphic Mail (My Pictograms)

Creating Categories	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>MY PICT</b> →  → <b>Add New Folder</b> →  → Enter name → 
Renaming Categories	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>MY PICT</b> →  → <b>Select Category</b> →  → <b>Edit Category Name</b> →  → Enter name → 
Changing Category order	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>MY PICT</b> →  → <b>Select Category</b> →  → <b>Relocate Category</b> →  → Select target location → 
Deleting Categories	In text entry window,  (Long) → <b>MY PICT</b> →  → <b>Select Category</b> →  → <b>Delete Category</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → 



## Receiving/Opening Messages

## Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	☰ (Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	☰ → ☰ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a PC Mail Account exists, select <b>S! Mail</b> and press ●.</li> <li>Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.</li> </ul>
Retrieving Server Mail list	☰ → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>Mail List</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●
Retrieving remaining portions	<b>Via Mail Notice</b> <b>In message list, select Mail Notice</b> → ● → ☰ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve size options appear, select one and press ●.</li> </ul> <b>Via Server Mail List</b> ☰ → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>Mail List</b> → ● → <b>Select message</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Retrieving all Server Mail	<b>[Start Here]</b> ☰ → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → ● → <b>See below</b> <b>Directly from Server</b> <b>Retrieve All</b> → ● <b>Via Server Mail List</b> <b>Mail List</b> → ● → ☰ → <b>Retrieve All</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>

## Message Window

Saving attachments to Data Folder	<b>In message window, select file</b> → ☰ → <b>Save to Data Folder</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For templates, <b>Save as Template</b> appears. (Omit file name entry step.)</li> </ul>
Installing attached widgets	<b>In message window, select file</b> → ☰ → <b>Install Attach</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ●
Using attachments	<b>[Start Here]</b> <b>In message window, select file</b> → ☰ → <b>See below</b> <b>As Wallpaper</b> <b>Set as Wallpaper</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ● → <b>Vertical or Horizontal</b> → ● → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul> <b>As Ringtone/Ringvideo</b> <b>Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ● → <b>Select item</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <b>For New Message</b> or <b>For New PC Mail</b>, enter ring time and press ●.</li> </ul>
Playing slides	<b>In message window,</b> ☰ → <b>Slide Play</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A slide consists of message text with attachments.</li> </ul>



Saving to Phone Book	<p><b>Saving Sender Address</b></p> <p>In message window,  → <b>Save Address</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>Select number or mail address</b> → ● → <b>As New Entry</b> → ● → <b>Complete other fields</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Saving Linked Info</b></p> <p>In message window, select number or mail address → ● → <b>Save to Phone Book</b> or <b>Save Address</b> → ● → <b>As New Entry</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Complete other fields</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
Using linked info	<p><b>Dialing Numbers</b></p> <p>In message window, select number → ● →</p> <p><b>Call</b> or <b>Video Call</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Sending Messages</b></p> <p>In message window, select number or mail address → ● → <b>Create Message</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Accessing Internet Sites</b></p> <p>In message window, select URL → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Choose <b>Select Br.</b> to select browser.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Saving Location Information URLs</b></p> <p>In message window, select URL → ● →</p> <p><b>RegisterMyLocation</b> → ● → <b>Name</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Enter name</b> → ● → </p>
	<p><b>Setting Location Information as Destination</b></p> <p>In message window, select URL → ● → <b>Set to Destination</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>

Copying text	<p><b>Start Here</b> In message window,  → <b>Copy</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Sender/Recipient Number/Address</b></p> <p><b>Address</b> → ● → <b>Select number/address</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Subject or Message Text</b></p> <p><b>Subject or Message Text</b> → ● → <b>Select first character</b> → ● → <b>Highlight text range</b> → ●</p>
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	<p>In message window,  → <b>Copy &amp; Search Dict.</b></p> <p>→ ● → <b>Select first character</b> → ● →</p> <p><b>Highlight text range</b> → ● → <b>Select dictionary</b> → ● → <b>Search</b> → ● → <b>Select word</b> → ●</p>
Jumping to message top/bottom	<p>In message window,  → <b>View Settings</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>Scroll Jump</b> → ● → <b>Jump to Top</b> or <b>Jump to Bottom</b> → ●</p>
Deleting attachments	<p>In message window, select file →  →</p> <p><b>Remove File</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	<p>In message window,  → <b>Report Spam</b> → ●</p> <p>→ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signature is not inserted automatically.</li> <li>• Not available for PC Mail.</li> </ul>
Saving attachments within Graphic Mail	<p>In <b>Graphic Mail</b> message window,  → <b>Save Items</b> → ● → <b>Select file</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p>



Saving My Pictograms within Graphic Mail	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> In Graphic Mail message window,  → <b>Save Items</b> → ● → <b>Save My Pictograms</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>All Files</b>  <b>Save All</b> → ● → Select folder → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p> <p><b>One File</b>  Select file → ● → Enter name → ● → Select folder → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Selected Files</b>   → Select file → ● <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> → Complete selection →  → Select folder → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p>
	<p>In Graphic Mail message window,  → <b>Save as Template</b> → ● → Enter name → ● → <b>Save here</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>■ Replying</b></p>
Selecting mail type/quote option	<p>In message window,  → <b>Reply-To Addr.</b> → ● → Select type/option → ● → Complete message → </p>
Opening received message for reference	<p>In message window,  → <b>Rep. with View</b> → ● → Select option → ● → Complete message → </p>
Replying quickly using fixed text	<p><b>Editing Quick Reply Text</b>   → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ● → <b>Send/Compose</b> → ● → <b>Set Quick Reply</b> → ● → Select text → ● → Edit → ●</p> <p><b>Using Quick Reply</b>  In message window,  (Long) → Select text → ●</p>

Replying to messages automatically	<p><b>[Start Here]</b>  → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ● → <b>Send/Compose</b> → ● → <b>Auto Reply</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Saving Recipients</b>  <b>Address Setting</b> → ● → Select blank entry → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → Select mode → ●   <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select saved recipient and press ● to edit number/address.</li> </ul> <p><b>Editing Reply Text</b>  <b>Reply Message</b> → ● → Select mode → ● → <b>Enter text</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Edit text for each mode.</li> </ul> <p><b>Activating Auto Reply</b>  <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Replies are sent via S! Mail.</li> <li>● Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated.</li> <li>● Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or outside Japan.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>[Start Here]</b>  → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>General Settings</b> → ● → <b>Display Rotation</b> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Message Window</b>  <b>Reference Reply</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Send reply confirmation is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Mail Composition Window (for Reply)</b>  <b>Reply From Mail</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Original message window is hidden.</li> </ul>
	<p>Viewing messages in Cycloid position</p>



## Managing Messages

## Message List

	<p><b>Selecting</b></p> <p>In message list,   Select message   </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To uncheck, press  again.</li> </ul>
Selecting multiple messages	<p><b>Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once</b></p> <p>In message list,   <b>Manage Msg.</b> <b>Check in Block</b> </p> <p><b>Unchecking All</b></p> <p>In message list,   <b>Uncheck All</b> </p>
Color-tagging messages	In message list, <b>Manage Msg.</b> <b>Color Label</b> <b>Select color</b>
Sorting messages	In message list, <b>View Settings</b> <b>Sort</b> <b>Select option</b>
Opening sender/recipient details	In message list, select message <b>View Mail Address</b> <b>Select sender or recipient</b>
Checking memory status	<p> <b>Memory Status</b> <b>Select item</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to check memory status by service (SMS &amp; S! Mail or PC Mail).</li> <li>USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.</li> </ul>
Opening properties	In message list, select message <b>Message Details</b>
Changing template name display	<b>Templates</b> <b>Item Displayed</b> <b>Select item</b>

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card

In message list, select SMS message **Manage Msg.** **Move to USIM**

- Available for compatible USIM Cards.

Changing received message status (read/unread)

In message list, select message **Manage Msg.** **Switch to Unread** or **Switch to Read**

## Deleting Messages

	<p><b>One Message</b></p> <p>In message list, select message    <b>Delete</b> <b>Yes</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, delete an open message.</li> </ul>
Deleting messages	<p><b>All Messages</b></p> <p>In message list,   <b>Delete All</b> <b>Delete All or Except Locked Msg.</b> <b>Enter Handset Code</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For Spam Folder messages, delete Server Mail confirmation appears. Choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press .</li> </ul> <p><b>All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages</b></p> <p>In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages),   <b>Delete All</b> <b>Enter Handset Code</b> </p>
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	In message list, select Mail Notice <b>Delete</b> <b>Select option</b> <b>Yes</b>



Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → <b>Mail List</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b></li> </ul> <p><b>One Message</b> Select message → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>All Messages</b> → <b>Delete All</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>Yes</b></p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Server Mail Box</b> → <b>Delete All</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>All Retrieved Messages</b> <b>Except New Msg.</b></p> <p><b>All Messages</b> <b>Delete All</b></p>
<b>■ Folders</b>	
Moving messages manually	<p>In message list, select message → <b>Manage Msg.</b> → <b>Move to Folder</b> → Select folder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If sort messages confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b>; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.</li> </ul>
Renaming folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Rename</b> → Enter name</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>

Deleting folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Delete</b> → Enter Handset Code</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If delete message confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>.</b></li> <li>When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.</li> </ul>
Deleting Spam Folder messages	<p>In folder list, <b>Spam Folder</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Delete Spam Measures.</b> → Enter Handset Code</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corresponding Server Mail messages are also deleted.</li> </ul>
Adding folders	<p>In folder list, → <b>Create New Folder</b> → Enter name</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>
Moving folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Relocate Folder</b> → Select target location</p>
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>To All Read</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → <b>Protect</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel protection, select <b>Not Protect</b> and press <b>.</b> in the steps above.</li> </ul>
Canceling Secret	<p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder → <b>Unset Secret</b> → Enter Handset Code</p>



## ■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder → ☰ → <i>Classify</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available in Chat Folder list as well.</li> </ul>
Sorting spam by setting keys	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>General Settings</i> → ● → <i>Sort Spam Mail</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● Code → ● → <i>Individual(Common)</i> → ● (✓) ☰ → Select blank entry → ● → Select key → ● → Select/enter number/address/subject → ● → ● → Y → Y → ●
Editing/deleting sort keys	<b>Start Here</b> In folder list, select folder → ☰ → <i>My Folders</i> → ● → Select entry → See below
	<b>Editing Sender/Recipient Key</b> ☰ → <i>Replace</i> → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → Y
	<b>Editing Subject Key</b> ● → Edit → ● → Y
	<b>Deleting an Entry</b> ☰ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → Yes → ● → Y
	<b>Deleting All Entries</b> ☰ → <i>Clear All</i> → ● → Yes → ● → Y
<b>■ Chat Folders</b>	
Deleting folders	☰ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → Select folder → ☰ → <i>Delete Folder</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If delete message confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> <li>When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.</li> </ul>

Deleting all messages	☰ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → Select folder → ● → ☰ → <i>Manage Msg.</i> → ● → <i>Delete All</i> → ● → Yes → ●
Resetting Chat Folders	☰ → <i>Chat Folder</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Reset</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●

## ■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Mail Groups</i> → ● → Select Group → ☰ → <i>Edit Name</i> → ● → Enter name → ● → Yes → ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	<b>Start Here</b> ☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Mail Groups</i> → ● → Select Group → See below
	<b>Mail Groups</b> ☰ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → Yes → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●
	<b>Group Members</b> ● → Select member → ☰ → <i>Remove Entry</i> → ● → Yes → ● → Y <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.</li> </ul>
Changing Mail Group members	☰ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Mail Groups</i> → ● → Select Group → ● → Select member → ☰ → <i>Re-assign Entry</i> → ● → Select entry → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → Yes → ● → Y



## Using Messages

Forwarding messages	In message window,  → <b>Forward</b> →  → Select recipient field →  → Select method →  → Select/enter number/address →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attached files are forwarded.</li> <li>To forward SMS messages, select <b>SI Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press .</li> </ul>
Sending from Drafts	→ <b>Drafts</b> →  → Select message →  → Complete message →
Sending unspent messages	<b>Start Here</b> → <b>Unsent Messages</b> →  → Select message →  → See below <b>Sending without Editing</b> <b>Resend</b> → <b>Edit &amp; Send</b> <b>Edit</b> →  → Complete message →
Using sent messages	→ <b>Sent Messages</b> →  → Select folder →  → Select message →  → <b>Edit &amp; Send</b> →  → Complete message →
Saving schedules from message list	In message list, select message →  → <b>Manage Msg.</b> →  → <b>Save to Calendar</b> →  → Enter subject →  → Select Category →  → Enter start/end date/time →  → Complete other fields → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source message is accessible from schedule window (via <b>Related Mail</b> in Options menu).</li> </ul>

## Via Mail Notice

In message list, select Mail Notice → → **Forward** → → **Notifi. Forward** (forward Mail Notice text only) or **Remote Forward** → → Select recipient field → → Select method → → Select/enter number/address → →

## Forwarding Server Mail

## Via Server Mail List

→ **Server Mail Box** → → **Mail List** → → Select message → → **Remote Forward** → → Select recipient field → → Select method → → Select/enter number/address → → 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

## Opening Server Mail properties

→ **Server Mail Box** → → **Mail List** → → Select message → → **Message Details** → → 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

## Checking Server Mail message count and volume

→ **Server Mail Box** → → **Mailbox Volume** → →



## General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●
Changing message list view	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Message List View → ● → Select option → ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Address View → ● → Show All → ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Received Msg. View → ● → Select option → ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Sent Msg. View → ● → Select option → ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Auto Delete → ● → Received Msg. → ● → Select option → ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Auto Delete → ● → Sent Messages → ● → Not Auto Del → ●
Changing spam report recipient	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Report Spam → ● → Edit address → ● → Yes → ●

## General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Delivery Report → ● → On → ● • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Auto Resend → ● → Off → ●
Designating/editing reply-to address	<b>Start Here</b> ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply to Settings → ● → See below <b>Designating</b> Switch On/Off → ● → On → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter address → ● <b>Editing</b> Edit Address → ● → Edit → ●
Selecting quote option	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply With Text → ● → Select option → ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Sending Status → ● → Off(Background) → ●
Deleting Permitted List entries	<b>Start Here</b> ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Restrictions Setting → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Individual Address → ● → Permitted List → ● → Select entry → ☰ → See below <b>One Entry</b> Delete → ● → Yes → ● <b>All Entries</b> Clear All → ● → Yes → ●



## General Settings (Receive)

## ■ Message Notice &amp; Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Message Notice → ● → Secret Folder → ● → No Response → ●
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	☰ (Start Here) → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Message Notice → ● → See below Showing New Message Window On Active Screen → ● → On → ● Selecting Scrolling Notice Option View Setting → ● → Select option → ● Muting Alert Sound Alert Sound → ● → Off → ●
Disabling Animation View	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Animation View → ● → Off → ●
■ Feeling Mail	
Hiding graphics above Information window	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Link to Feeling → ● → Idle Screen Info. → ● → Off → ●

Changing illumination settings	☰ (Start Here) → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Link to Feeling → ● → Light → ● → See below Disabling Illumination Switch On/Off → ● → Off → ●
	Changing Color Light Color → ● → Select category → ● → Select color → ●
	Setting Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern → ● → Select item → ● → Select pattern → ● • Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to <i>Link to Sound</i> .
Selecting Vibration option	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Link to Feeling → ● → Vibration Pattern → ● → Select option → ●
Changing ringtone settings	☰ (Start Here) → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Receive → ● → Link to Feeling → ● → Ringtone → ● → See below Muting Ringer Switch On/Off → ● → Off → ● Changing Ringtones Assign Tone → ● → Select category → ● → Select folder → ● → Select tone/file → ● Changing Duration Duration → ● → Enter time → ●



## S! Mail Settings

## Automatic Retrieval

Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Message DL → ● → Condition(Auto) → ●          → All Message → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Available when Sort Spam Mail is active.</li> </ul>
Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	<p>Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Message DL → ● → Condition(Auto) → ●          → Selected Mail → ☰ → See below</p> <p><b>One Entry (Mail Address)</b>          Individual Address → ☰ → Select entry → ☰          → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → Yr</p> <p><b>All Entries (Mail Address)</b>          Individual Address → ☰ → Select entry → ☰          → Clear All → ● → Yes → ● → Yr</p> <p><b>One Entry (Domain)</b>          Receive by the Domain → ☰ → Select entry → ☰          → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → Yr</p> <p><b>All Custom Entries (Domain)</b>          Receive by the Domain → ☰ → Select entry → ☰          → Clear All → ● → Yes → ● → Yr</p>

## Attachments

Disabling image auto-resize	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Picture Appearance → ● → Normal → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting applies to PC Mail as well.</li> </ul>
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Auto Play File → ● → Pictures or Sounds → ●          → On or Off → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting applies to PC Mail as well.</li> </ul>
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Send File Settings → ● → Attach Only → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting applies to PC Mail as well.</li> <li>• Depending on camera settings (Auto Save and Background Save), files are saved when opening Mail Composition window via newly captured image or newly recorded video regardless of the setting above.</li> </ul>
<b>Message Size</b>	
Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Create Msg. Size → ● → 300KB or Confirm(When exceed 300KB) → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.</li> </ul>
Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Message DL → ● → DL Size Limit → ● → Restricted(300KB) → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exceeding attachments are reduced (images) or deleted (other files) at Server.</li> </ul>
Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → S! Mail Settings → ●          → Picture Auto Resize → ● → Select option → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set to Ask Each Time to select size every time an image is attached.</li> </ul>



## PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages

☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ●  
 → PC Mail DL → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → All Contents → ●

Retrieving new messages automatically

Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → Check New Mail → ● → See below

## Enabling Automatic Retrieval

Check New Mail → ● → On → ● → Select account → ● (☑) → ●

- Setting Check New Mail to **On** may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Handset does not check for new messages between 10:00 PM and 6:00 AM; change/cancel Inactive Time as needed.

## Enabling Automatic Retrieval Outside Japan

Abroad → ● → Enable → ● → ●

- Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges.

## Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval

Interval → ● → Select interval → ●

## Changing Inactive Time

Inactive Time → ● → Start Time: → ● →  
 Enter start time → ● → End Time: → ● →  
 Enter end time → ●

## Canceling Inactive Time

Inactive Time → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → Off → ●

Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder

In folder list, select PC Mail folder → ☰ → Retrieve New → ●

Disabling automatic word wrap

☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → Word wrap → ● → Off → ●

Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses

Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → DL All From List → ☰ → See below

## Selecting Sender Types

Select item → ● (☐/☑) → ●

## Specifying Addresses

Individual Address → ☰ → Select blank entry → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter address → ● → ●

## Specifying Domains (Direct Entry)

Receive by the Domain → ☰ → Select blank entry → ● → Direct Entry → ● → Enter domain → ● → ●



Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PC Mail</b>  <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PC Mail DL</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PC Mail</b>  <b>DL</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>DL All From List</b> ⇒  ⇒ See below</p> <p><b>One Entry (Mail Address)</b>  <b>Individual Address</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select entry</b> ⇒   ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Yes</b> ⇒  ⇒ </p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Mail Address)</b>  <b>Individual Address</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select entry</b> ⇒   ⇒ <b>Clear All</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Yes</b> ⇒  ⇒ </p>
	<p><b>One Entry (Domain)</b>  <b>Receive by the Domain</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select entry</b> ⇒   ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Yes</b> ⇒  ⇒ </p>
	<p><b>All Entries (Domain)</b>  <b>Receive by the Domain</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select entry</b> ⇒   ⇒ <b>Clear All</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Yes</b> ⇒  ⇒ </p>
Restricting complete message retrieval by size	<p> ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PC Mail Settings</b> ⇒   ⇒ <b>PC Mail DL</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Max DL Size</b> ⇒   <b>Select account</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select size</b> ⇒   • Effective when PC Mail DL is set to <b>All Contents</b> or <b>DL All From List</b>.</p>

## SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit	<p> ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>SMS Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒   <b>Expiry Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select option</b> ⇒ </p>
Changing SMS Server number	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>SMS Settings</b>  ⇒  ⇒ <b>Message Center</b> ⇒  ⇒ See below</p> <p><b>Editing</b>  <b>Setting1(Default) to Setting3</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Edit</b>  <b>number</b> ⇒   • Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.</p>
	<p><b>Deleting</b>  <b>Setting2 or Setting3</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒  ⇒   <b>Yes</b> ⇒ </p>
	<p><b>Activating</b>  <b>Setting2 or Setting3</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set Default</b> ⇒   • Activated number moves to <b>Setting1(Default)</b> and shifts the others down.</p>
	<p><b>Changing</b>  <b>character encoding</b>  <b>for composing</b>  <b>messages</b></p>
	<p> ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>SMS Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒   <b>Char-code</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select encoding</b> ⇒ </p>





## Incoming Messages

### ? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.

### ? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose **Yes** and press . Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

### ? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

### ? Message text appears distorted

- Follow these steps to change encoding:  
**[Message Window]**  **➔ View Settings**  **➔ Char-code**  **➔ Select option** 

## Handling Messages

### ? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

### ? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.5-29).
- If **out** appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

### ? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

### ? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

### ? Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



<b>Internet Services .....</b>	<b>6-2</b>
Service Basics .....	6-2
<b>Yahoo! Keitai .....</b>	<b>6-3</b>
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3
<b>PC Sites .....</b>	<b>6-5</b>
Browsing PC Sites.....	6-5
<b>Browsing.....</b>	<b>6-6</b>
Basic Operations .....	6-6

<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>6-8</b>
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages....	6-8
<b>RSS Feeds .....</b>	<b>6-9</b>
Updating Blogs & News.....	6-9
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>6-18</b>

# 6

## Internet



## Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).
- Outside Japan, Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser cannot be used over Wi-Fi.

### Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

### Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

### Opening Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GMO GlobalSign, RSA Security, SECOM Trust Systems and Comodo Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

### Advanced

-   Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)  Clearing authentication information (And more on **P.6-10**)
-  Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on **P.6-17**)



## Using Yahoo! Keitai

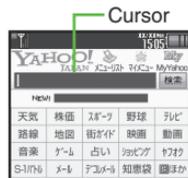
Access Yahoo! Keitai sites via 3G Network or Wi-Fi.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use Yahoo! Keitai over Wi-Fi.
- To use Wi-Fi, complete related settings beforehand.
- Within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

### Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.

#### 1 ➔ Connection starts



Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press .

#### 2 ➔ Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat  to open additional links.

#### 3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

### Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ Forward ➔ 

### Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page]  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai

➔ 

### User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔  ➔ 

### Accessing *メニューリスト* Directly

 ➔ Yahoo! ➔  ➔  ➔ Menu List ➔ 

### Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually

[Internet Page]  ➔ Convenient

Functions ➔  ➔ Switch Wi-Fi/3G

➔  ➔ Select network ➔ 

## Advanced

-   Switching browsers (P.6-10)



## Playing Media during Download

Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files.

- Save progressive download files of 10 MB or less, as needed, after playback. (Copy protected files cannot be saved.)
- These media files cannot be saved even after playback:
  - Progressive download files larger than 10 MB
  - Streaming media files
- Fast forward/rewind is not available for progressive download files larger than 10 MB.
- Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.

- 1 On a page, select file** → 
  - Playback starts.

## Pausing Playback

- To resume playback, press .
- Progressive download continues even while playback is paused. For files larger than 10 MB, progressive download stops if playback is paused for a period of time.

## Stopping Playback

 → **Back** → 

## Stopping Progressive Download

- For files of 10 MB or less, progressive download continues even while playback is paused or stopped. To stop download, press  during playback to return to the previous page, then press  again.

## Playback Sound

- Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting.

## Using History

- 1**  → **Yahoo!** →  → **History** → 
- 2** **Select record** →  → **Connection starts**
  - Corresponding page opens.
- 3**  → **Yes** →  → **Page closes**

## Entering URLs Directly

- 1**  → **Yahoo!** →  → **Enter URL** → 
- 2** **Enter URL** →  → **Connection starts**
  - Corresponding page opens.
- 3**  → **Yes** →  → **Page closes**

## Advanced

-   Using previously entered URLs
-   Deleting History records
-   Sorting History records (And more on **P.6-10**)
-   Customizing media playback settings (And more on **P.6-14**)



## Browsing PC Sites

View PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser. (Direct Browser requires Wi-Fi connection.)

- To use Wi-Fi, complete related settings beforehand.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- When using PC Site Browser within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Browsing PC sites via PC Site Browser may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi.
- PC Site Browser and Direct Browser share Bookmarks, Saved Pages, History, etc.

1 ● ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ●

2 **PC Site Browser or Direct Browser** ➔ ●

3 **Homepage** ➔ ● ➔ **Connection starts**



Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press ●.

4 **Highlight menu item** ➔ ●

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 4 to open additional links.

5 ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **Page closes**

### Direct Browser

- Use this Wi-Fi-based browser to view PC sites without using SoftBank 3G Network service.

### Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] ● ➔ **Previous page opens**

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page] ● ➔ **Forward** ➔ ●

### Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] ● ➔ **Homepage** ➔ ●

### User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ●

### Using History

In ●, **History** ➔ ● ➔ **Select record** ➔ ●

### Entering URLs Directly

In ●, **Enter URL** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter URL** ➔ ●

### Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually (PC Site Browser)

[Internet Page] ● ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch Wi-Fi/3G** ➔ ● ➔ **Select network** ➔ ●

## Advanced

- Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties (P.6-10)
- Showing navigation map for continuous scroll
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding PC Site Browser messages
- Setting up proxy
- Setting search engine URLs (And more on P.6-13)



## Basic Operations

### Page Browsing

#### Scrolling Pages

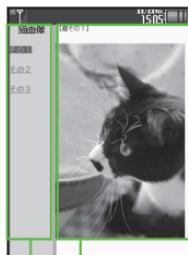
If page content continues beyond view, use to scroll pages.

Long Press to scroll continuously.



### Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press to switch active frame.



Frames

- In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press to select it.
- Otherwise, use to select one.

#### Viewing Single Frame

[Internet Page] Select frame

Convenient Functions

Frame In

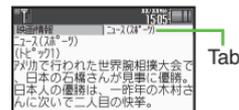
- To return, press .

### Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

#### Opening a New Tab

- 1 On a page, select menu item **Tab Menu**
- 2 **Open in New Tab**



#### Switching Tabs

- 1 (Long) **Select tab**
- In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press to open it.

#### Closing Tabs

- (Long) **Select tab** **Close Tab** or **Close All Other Tabs**

## Advanced

- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Changing Font Size
- Enlarging specific areas
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback
- Changing scroll unit (And more on P.6-11 - 6-13)

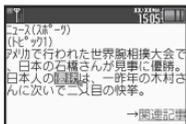
## Selecting Text

Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries. Follow these steps to use a dictionary:  
(Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.)

### 1 On a page, point to first character ➡ ● (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

### 2 Highlight text range



### 3 ●

### 4 辞書 ➡ Select dictionary



- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

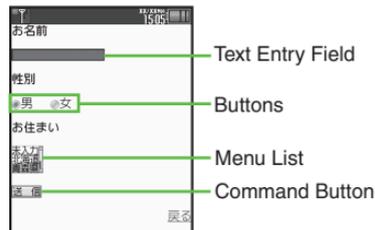
### 5 Search ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●

## Starting Over

- After ●, point to first character ➡ ●  
➡ From ●

## Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.



## Text Entry

### 1 On a page, select text entry field ➡ ●

### 2 Enter text ➡ ●

- Internet page returns.

## Using Entered Text (Input Memory)

- [Internet page] Select text entry field  
➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Insert/Font Size ➡ ●  
➡ Input Memory ➡ ● ➡ Select text  
➡ ●

## Pull-down Menu Item Selection

### 1 On a page, select menu list field ➡ ●

### 2 Select item ➡ ●

## When Multiple Selection is Supported

- Select items as needed and press [実行].

## Page Item Indicators

### ■ Selection Items

Buttons ● or boxes □ appear.

### 1 On a page, select button or box ➡ ●



- ●/□ changes to ●/☑.

### ■ Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

### 1 On a page, select command ➡ ●



## Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

### Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

#### Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page,   $\rightarrow$  **Bookmarks**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **<Add New Entry>**  $\rightarrow$  
  - **<Add New Entry>** appears in gray for unsavable pages.
- 2 Check/edit URL  $\rightarrow$  
- 3 Check/edit title  $\rightarrow$  
- 4 Save  $\rightarrow$  

### Opening Bookmarks

- 1   $\rightarrow$  **Yahoo!**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Bookmarks**  $\rightarrow$  
- 2 Select title  $\rightarrow$  
  - Corresponding page opens.

#### Switching Bookmarks Lists

After 1,   $\rightarrow$  **Change List**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Select type**  $\rightarrow$  

#### Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page]   $\rightarrow$  **Bookmarks**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Select title**  $\rightarrow$  

### Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

#### Saving Pages

- 1 On a page,   $\rightarrow$  **Saved Pages**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Save**  $\rightarrow$  
  - **Save** appears only for savable pages.
- 2 Check/edit title  $\rightarrow$  

#### Opening Saved Pages

- 1   $\rightarrow$  **Yahoo!**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Saved Pages**  $\rightarrow$  
- 2 Select page  $\rightarrow$  
  - Corresponding page opens.

#### Switching Saved Pages Lists

After 1,   $\rightarrow$  **Change List**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Select type**  $\rightarrow$  

#### Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page]   $\rightarrow$  **Saved Pages**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Open List**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Select page**  $\rightarrow$  

### Advanced

-   Deleting titles  Editing titles  Changing title order  Sorting titles into folders  Deleting pages  Editing page titles  Changing page order (And more on P.6-14 - 6-15)

## Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.

Packet transmission fees apply (except when handling RSS feeds via Wi-Fi).

### Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Indicator below appears for RSS-compatible sites.



RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

- 1 On a compatible page, → **Register In RSS Feed** →
- 2 Select feed → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** →
- 3 **Save** →
  - Choose **Yes** to update immediately or **No** and press .

### Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

- 1 On a page, select icon →
- 2 **Yes** → → **Save** →

### Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

- 1 → **Yahoo!** →
- 2 **PC Site Browser or Direct Browser** → → **RSS Feed** →

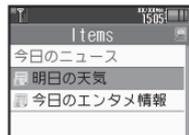


RSS Feed List

- 3 **Reload All** →

- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

- 4 **Select feed** →



Title List

- 5 **Select title** →

- Information appears.

### Updating Single RSS Feeds

[RSS Feed List] Select feed → → **Reload** →

- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Accessing Source Sites

[Title List] Select title → → **Select linked title** →

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Advanced

- Disabling feed updates
- Sorting feeds into folders
- Deleting feeds
- Sorting feeds
- Opening feed properties
- Exchanging feeds with other devices
- Sending feeds via mail (P.6-16)



## Connecting & Browsing

### General

Switching browsers	<p>On a page, ☰ → <b>Switch Browser</b> → ● → <b>This Page or Linked Page</b> → ● → <b>Select browser</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A confirmation may appear when switching to PC Site Browser.</li> </ul>
Using previously entered URLs	<p><b>Start Here</b> → ● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>  <b>Enter URL</b> → ● → ☰ → <b>URL Entry Log</b> → ● → <b>Select URL</b> → ● → ●</p> <p><b>PC Site Browser &amp; Direct Browser</b>  <b>PC Site Browser or Direct Browser</b> → ● → ● → <b>Enter URL</b> → ● → ☰ → <b>URL Entry Log</b> → ● → <b>Select URL</b> → ● → ●</p>

### History

Follow these steps to switch History lists:

☰ → **Change List** → ● → **Select browser** → ●

Deleting History records	<p><b>Start Here</b> → ● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>History</b> → ● → ● → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>One Record</b>  <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>All Records</b>  ☰ → <b>Delete All</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>

Opening History properties	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>History</b> → ● → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Details</b> → ●
Sorting History records	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>History</b> → ● → ☰ → <b>Sort</b> → ● → <b>By Domain or By Date</b> → ●
Sending History records via mail	<p>● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>History</b> → ● → <b>Select record</b> → ☰ → <b>Send URL</b> → ● → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> → ● → <b>Complete message</b> → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>

### Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** → ●.

**PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser)** → ● → **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** → ●

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Memory Operation</b> → ● → <b>Delete Cache</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●
Clearing cookies	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Memory Operation</b> → ● → <b>Delete Cookies</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●
Clearing authentication information	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Memory Operation</b> → ● → <b>Delete Auth Info</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●



## Page Operations

## All Browsers

Using linked info	<p><b>Dialing Numbers</b> On a page, highlight number → ● → <i>Call or Video Call</i> → ●</p> <p><b>Sending Messages</b> On a page, highlight number or mail address → ● → <i>Create Message or Create</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ☺</p>
Copying text	On a page, ☺ → <i>Copy Text</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Copy &amp; Search Dict.</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ● → Select dictionary → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → Select word, etc. → ●
Using Web Search	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Web Search</i> → ● → Enter search text → ●
Searching current page	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → Enter search text → ● ● Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Jump In Page</i> → ● → <i>Page Top or Page Bottom</i> → ●
Opening page properties	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → Select item → ●
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ☺ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Send URL</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ☺ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

## Handling Flash® files

**Start Here** On a page, ☺ → *Convenient Functions* → ● → *Flash@Menu* → ● → See below

**Pausing/Playing**

*Pause, Resume or Replay* → ●

**Selecting Image Quality**

*Quality* → ● → Select quality → ●

## Saving files to Data Folder

**Start Here** On a page, ☺ → *Save Items* → ● → See below

**Files on Page**

Select file → ● → *Save* → ● → Enter name → ● → *Save here* → ●

- On a page with background image, select *Save Items* and press ● first.
- Some files are saved automatically.
- End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand.
- Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.

**Background Images**

*Save Background Image* → ● → *Save* → ● → Enter name → ● → *Save here* → ●

## Updating page content

On a page, ☺ → *Reload* → ●

- To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.

## Changing encoding to read garbled text

On a page, ☺ → *Settings* → ● → *Char-code* → ● → Select option → ●

## Opening function shortcuts

On a page, ☺ → *Help* → ●



### ■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing Font Size	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce
<b>■ PC Site Browser &amp; Direct Browser</b>	
Switching view	On a page,  → <i>PC Screen</i> or <i>Small Screen</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.</li> </ul>
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page,  (Long) → Quick Movement map appears → Select target location → ●
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area →  (Long) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use  to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press ● to execute it.</li> <li>To close enlarged view, press a key other than .</li> </ul>
Hiding Softkeys	On a page,  → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Softkey Area</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To show Softkeys temporarily, press .</li> </ul>

### Internet Page Settings

#### ■ All Browsers

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** → ●.

**PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser)** → ● → **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** → ●

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	<b>(Start Here)</b> ● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Downloads</b> → ● → See below <b>Image Display</b> <i>Images</i> → ● → <i>Do not Show</i> → ● <b>Sound Playback</b> <i>Sounds</i> → ● → <i>Do not Play</i> → ●
Changing Font Size	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Font Size</b> → ● → <b>Select size</b> → ●
Using pointer navigation	<b>(Start Here)</b> ● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Cursor Settings</b> → ● → See below <b>Activating</b> <i>Cursor Mode Settings</i> → ● → <i>Normal Mode</i> → ●
Using handset as primary download storage	● → <b>Yahoo!</b> → ● → <b>Browser Settings</b> → ● → <b>Download to</b> → ● → <b>Phone Preferred</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some files may be saved to Memory Card regardless of this setting.</li> </ul>



## ■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit  
 ● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ●  
 → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●

## ■ PC Site Browser & Direct Browser

For Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *PC Site Browser* → ● → *PC Site Browser Settings* → ●.  
*Direct Browser* → ● → *Set Direct Browser* → ●

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll  
 ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● →  
 PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Scroll Settings → ● → Page Navigation → ● → On → ●

Changing scroll unit  
 ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● →  
 PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Scroll Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●

## ■ PC Site Browser

Hiding PC Site Browser messages  
 ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● →  
 PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Warning Message → ● → Off → ●

## ■ Direct Browser

Restricting Direct Browser use  
 ● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● →  
 Set Direct Browser → ● → Direct Browser Lock → ● → On → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ●

Setting up proxy	Start Here ● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Proxy Setting → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ● → Use → ● → See below
	Entering Address Proxy Address → ● → Enter address → ● → 
	Entering Port Number Port Number → ● → Enter number → ● → 
Editing proxy settings	Specifying Addresses to Bypass Proxy Apply Address → ● → ● → Enter address → ● → 
	● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Proxy Setting → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ● → Use →  → Select item → ● → Edit → 
Changing home page	● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Homepage Settings → ● → Enter URL → ●
Setting search engine URLs	Start Here ● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Search Page → ● → See below
	Adding <Empty> → ● → ● → Enter URL → ●
	Changing Select URL → ●
	Editing Select URL →  → ● → Edit → ●



## Streaming &amp; Progressive Download

## ■ General

Customizing media playback settings	[Start Here] During playback, <b>Settings</b>
	<b>See below</b>
	<b>Changing Playback Size</b> <i>Display Size</i> <i>Select size</i> • Playback size may not change depending on file.
	<b>Setting Backlight Status</b> <i>Backlight</i> <i>Select option</i> • Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.
<b>Adjusting Sound Effects</b> <i>Sound Effects</i> <i>Select effect</i>	

## ■ Streaming

Streaming from Media Player	[Start Here] <b>Entertainment</b> <b>Media Player</b> <b>Streaming</b> <b>See below</b>
	<b>Resuming from Stopped Point</b> <i>Last Played</i>
	<b>Using Bookmarks</b> <i>Bookmarks</i> <i>Select title</i>
	<b>Using History</b> <i>History</i> <i>Select record</i>
Switching networks during media playback	During playback, <b>Switch Wi-Fi/3G</b> <i>Select network</i>

## Bookmarks

Deleting titles	[Start Here] <b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <b>See below</b>
	<b>One Title</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i>
Editing titles	<b>All Titles</b> <i>Delete All</i> <i>Enter Handset Code</i> <i>Yes</i>
	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Edit</i> <i>Title:</i> <i>Enter title</i>
Editing bookmarked URLs	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Edit</i> <i>URL:</i> <i>Edit</i>
	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Send</i> <i>As Message</i> <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> <i>Complete message</i>
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	• S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Change Order</i> <i>Select target location</i>
Changing title order	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Details</i>
	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Details</i>
Opening title properties	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Details</i>
	<b>Yahoo!</b> <b>Bookmarks</b> <i>Select title</i> <i>Details</i>



Sorting titles into folders	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Bookmarks</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Creating Folders</b></p> <p><b>Create Folder</b> → <b>Enter name</b></p>
	<p><b>Moving to Folders</b></p> <p><b>Select title</b> → <b>Move</b> → <b>Select folder</b> → <b>Move</b></p>
	<p><b>Moving from Folders</b></p> <p><b>Select folder</b> → <b>Select title</b> → <b>Move</b> → <b>Move</b></p>
	<p><b>Renaming Folders</b></p> <p><b>Select folder</b> → <b>Rename</b> → <b>Enter name</b></p>
	<p><b>Deleting All Titles within a Folder</b></p> <p><b>Select folder</b> → <b>Select title</b> → <b>Delete All</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>
<p><b>Deleting Folders</b></p> <p><b>Select folder</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>	

## Saved Pages

Deleting pages	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Saved Pages</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>One Page</b></p> <p><b>Select page</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p> <p><b>All Pages</b></p> <p><b>Delete All</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>
Editing page titles	<p><b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Saved Pages</b></p> <p><b>Select page</b> → <b>Rename</b> → <b>Enter title</b></p>
Changing page order	<p><b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Saved Pages</b></p> <p><b>Select page</b> → <b>Change Order</b></p> <p><b>Select target location</b></p>
Opening page properties	<p><b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Saved Pages</b></p> <p><b>Select page</b> → <b>Details</b></p>
Switching page list view	<p><b>Yahoo!</b> → <b>Saved Pages</b></p> <p><b>Select page</b> → <b>List View or Preview View</b></p>



## RSS Feeds

For Direct Browser, select **Direct Browser** instead of **PC Site Browser**.

Disabling feed updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Restrict Update → ●</li> </ul>
Sorting feeds into folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>Creating Folders</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Create Folder → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Moving to Folders</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Renaming Folders</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select folder → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Deleting Folders</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select folder → ☰ → Delete → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>One Entry</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select feed → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>All Entries</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternatively, perform <b>Delete RSS Feed List</b> in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings or Set Direct Browser) to delete all feeds.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul>
Deleting feeds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul>

Sorting feeds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Sort → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Opening feed properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Details → ●</li> </ul>
Exchanging feeds with other devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>Exporting All Feeds</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export All → ● → Select storage media → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Importing (Adding Feeds)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Import → ● → Select file → ● → As New Items → ● → Yes or No → ●</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Import → ● → Select file → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes or No → ●</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
	Sending feeds via mail



## Security Settings

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

**PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser)** ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** ➔ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Manufacture Number</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔ ● ● Not available for Direct Browser.
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Send Referer</b> ➔ ● ● ➔ <b>Not Send</b> ➔ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Cookies</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Script Settings</b> ➔ ● ● ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ ●
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Secure Prompt</b> ➔ ● ● ➔ <b>Do not Show</b> ➔ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Security Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Root Certificates</b> ➔ ● ● ➔ <b>Select certificate</b> ➔ ●

Changing validity of entered user ID/password

- ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ●  
➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Keep Auth Info** ➔ ●  
● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●
- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after powering handset off.
- Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)

- ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ●  
➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Restrict Ajax** ➔ ●  
● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

## Resetting

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

**PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser)** ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** ➔ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Initialized Browser</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ ● ● For Direct Browser, enter Administrator Code instead of Handset Code.
Restoring default handset settings	● ➔ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Reset Settings</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ ● ● For Direct Browser, enter Administrator Code instead of Handset Code.



## Connecting & Browsing

### ? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

## Page Operations

### ? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

### ? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

### ? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- Multi Job may be active. When switching between browsers, additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.



<b>Digital TV</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
Basics .....	7-2
Area Setup.....	7-4
Watching TV .....	7-5
Obtaining Program Information.....	7-7
Watching Two Programs Simultaneously .....	7-8
<b>TV Player</b> .....	<b>7-9</b>
Recording Programs.....	7-9
Playing Recorded Programs.....	7-10

<b>TV Timer</b> .....	<b>7-11</b>
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer ....	7-11
<b>Time Shift</b> .....	<b>7-12</b>
Time Shift Recording & Playback...	7-12
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>7-13</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>7-19</b>

# 7

## Digital TV



## Basics

943SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

### Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

### Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or Open Phone Book, etc.

### TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, open program details via current channel's schedule, or check other programs in the same time slot.

### View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

### Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

### Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

## Portrait & Cycloid Positions

View programs and Data Broadcast in portrait position, or rotate Display to Cycloid position to watch TV in widescreen.



## Dual One Seg Tuner for Simultaneous Viewing & Recording

Watch one program in half of Display while another appears in the other half; record both programs simultaneously. Press a key to switch positions for audio. Search other programs in the same time slot easily via program listing.



### Important Digital TV Usage Notes

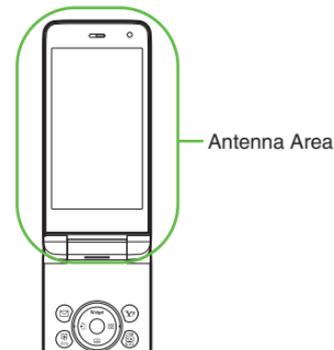
- 943SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programs may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/ reception is unstable

### Recording Precautions

- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 943SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

### Digital TV Antenna

TV Antenna is located behind Display. Move handset to find best reception.



Use optional TV Antenna Connection Cable as needed.

## Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 



• Setup confirmation appears.

2 Yes  



3 Select region  

4 Select prefecture     
Select locality  



• After setup, channel list appears.

5 



• To watch TV, select **Digital TV** and press .

### Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In  **No Preference**  

#### Adding Reception Areas

    **Set Channels**   

**Change Area**    **Select Area** 

  **Set Area Info**    **From** 

### Advanced

-   Switching reception Areas
-  Renaming Areas
-  Changing/disabling  function
-  Editing channels
-  Deleting all channels in Area
-  Adding new channels to Area
-  Updating all channels in the Area (P.7-13)



# Watching TV

First, complete Area setup (P.7-4).

## 1 Rotate Display



TV Window

- When rotating Display for the first time, Landscape menu opens; select **Activate Digital TV** and press **OK** to complete setup.
- Press **TV** to activate TV in portrait position; Data Broadcast appears below TV image.

## 2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Use **CH** to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

## 3 **Yes** ➔ **TV ends**

### Advanced

- Opening Help
- Searching for current program on the Internet
- Enlarging display size for portrait position
- Canceling image smoothing
- Saving current channel
- Selecting an audiovisual mode (And more on P.7-13)
- Adjusting current AV Mode parameters
- Changing panel pattern
- Customizing viewing options for Cycloid position (And more on P.7-14)

### Incoming Calls

- Press **CALL** to answer calls.

### When Answering Voice Calls with Memory Card Inserted

- Current program is temporarily recorded; start playback after the call. (Time Shift)

### Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press **MSG** to access messages.

### Key Assignments

Open Options Menu	
Toggle Panel On/Off	
Start/End Two Screen	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size	

### Panel Description



<b>1</b> Area name	<b>5</b> Station name
<b>2</b> Channel key	<b>6</b> Signal strength*
<b>3</b> Channel	<b>7</b> Sound Channel
<b>4</b> Program name	<b>8</b> Volume

\*The more bars the better.

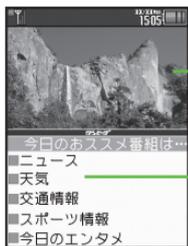
Indicator position varies with display size.



## Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait position, Data Broadcast appears below TV image. Use  to select an item and press  to access program-related information and interactive services.

Not available while Two Screen is active.



TV Image

Data Broadcast

Data Broadcast Window

### Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

## Still Image Capture

Capture screenshots while watching TV.

- May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer, etc.
- Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.

### 1 In TV window,

### 2

- Image is saved.

### Opening Saved Images

#### • While Watching TV

[TV Window]   *Useful Func.* 

  *TV-Image Folder*  

Select image  

#### • From Standby

  *TV*    *TV-Image Folder*

    Select image  

## Enlarging Image Portion

In Cycloid position, temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image.

May be unavailable while Two Screen is active, etc.

### 1 In TV window, - (Long)



- Key Assignments:

		
Upper Left	Upper Center	Upper Right
		
Center Left	Center	Center Right
		
Lower Left	Lower Center	Lower Right

## Advanced

-   Changing view
-  Returning to initial window
-  Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts
-  Hiding Network connection confirmation
-  Sending/hiding Location Information
-  Hiding manufacture number and other information (P.7-15)



## Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, open program details via current channel's schedule, or check other programs in the same time slot.

<b>TV Listing</b>	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
<b>Program Info</b>	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV
<b>Other TV Listing</b>	Open list of programs currently being broadcast; record one while watching current program

### TV Listing (Japanese)

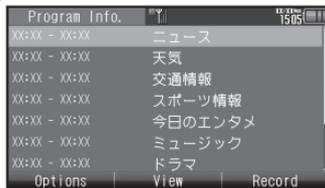
#### 1 In TV window, (Y) (Long)

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

### Program Info

#### 1 In TV window, (M) (Long) → OperateProgram → (C)

#### 2 Program Info. → (C)



Program Info Window

#### 3 Select program → (C)

- To return to TV window, press (M) twice.

#### Setting Recording Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program → (Y) → (C)

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

#### Setting TV Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program → (M) → Watching → (C)

### Other TV Listing

#### 1 In TV window (Cycloid position), (C)



Other TV Listing Window

#### 2 Select program → (M)

- Program details appear.
- To return to TV window, press (M) twice.

#### Accessing Other TV Listing in Portrait Position [TV Window] (M) → OperateProgram → (C) → Other TV Listing → (C)

#### Tuning in a Second Program in the Same Time Slot

#### [Other TV Listing Window] Select program → (C)

#### Recording a Second Program in the Same Time Slot

#### [Other TV Listing Window] Select program → (Y)

- Recording starts. (Two Screen starts.)

#### Opening Program Information by Station [Other TV Listing Window] Select program (station) → (C) (Long)

- To open program details, select a program and press (C) after the steps above.



## Watching Two Programs Simultaneously

943SH has built-in dual One Seg tuner; tune in two programs simultaneously in split screen.



Main Program



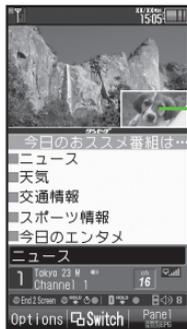
Second Program

### Picture-in-Picture

While main program appears, open a second one (audio muted) in an inset window.



Second Program



### 1 In TV window,



- Second program appears. (Two Screen starts.)
- Second program audio is muted.
- Second program channel selection is active by default. Cancel setting to navigate main program channels.

### 2 to watch second program

- Program positions switch.

### 3 Two Screen ends

- Main program appears alone.

### Split Screen Restrictions

- Data Broadcast, Other TV Listing, widescreen partial image enlargement, Change Area, Save Channel, etc. are unavailable.

### Advanced

-  ● Using Picture-in-Picture
- Canceling second program channel selection (P.7-15)

## Recording Programs

Record current program on handset or Memory Card.

- Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).
- When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Light illuminates green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

### 1 In TV window, (Long) ➔ Recording starts



Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.

### 2 (Long) ➔ Recording ends

#### Recording Programs in Portrait [TV Window] (Long)

- To stop, Long Press  while recording.

#### Recording a Second Program in the Same Time Slot

- Open Other TV Listing in TV window, then select a program and start recording.
- Channel selection does not affect recording of second program.

#### Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

#### Saving Files via the Internet while Recording

- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

#### Dubbing 10

- 943SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recordings to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.

#### Recording while Two Screen is Active

Recording of main program starts. To record second program simultaneously, press  and proceed. (Simultaneous recording)

- Memory Card is required for simultaneous recording.
- During simultaneous recording, operations are available for main program only.



Recording main program



Program positions switch



Simultaneous recording

### Advanced

-  Recording programs without Data Broadcasts
-  Saving Data Broadcast images to handset
-  Recording programs to handset (P.7-16)



## Playing Recorded Programs

- 1 In TV window, ➔ TV Player ➔



Video List

- indicates the file is unplayable.

- 2 Select file ➔



Playback Window

- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

- 3 (Long) ➔ Playback stops

### Switching Video Lists

After 1, ➔ Change to Phone or Change to MemoryCard ➔

### Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image following the same operations used while watching TV.

Fast Forward	<sup>1</sup>
Rewind	<sup>1,2</sup>
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	
Pause <sup>3</sup>	( in portrait)
Split File	(Long) <sup>4</sup>
Set Marker	<sup>4</sup>
Toggle Panel On/Off	

<sup>1</sup> Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press ( in portrait).

<sup>2</sup> Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)

<sup>3</sup> In pause, use to reverse/advance frame.

<sup>4</sup> Not available during Time Shift playback.

### Advanced

- Splitting files by specifying a time point ● Playing files repeatedly ● Playing split files ● Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders
- Checking memory status ● Renaming files ● Deleting files ● Copying files to Memory Card ● Opening file properties ● Playing files with Markers (And more on P.7-17 - 7-18)



## TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

- 1 In TV window,  ➔ *Rec./TimeShift* ➔ 
- 2 *Reservation List* ➔  ➔ 
- 3 *New Entry* ➔ 
- 4 *Manual* ➔  ➔ *Watching or Recording* ➔ 
- 5 Enter start date/time ➔  ➔ Enter end date/time ➔ 
- 6 *Channel:* ➔  ➔ *Select channel* ➔  ➔ 
  - If a message appears, read and then press .

### Setting Timer via EPG

In , *From TV Listing* ➔ 

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

### Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception; keep handset open.

- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

### At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.



Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

### While Watching TV

- Two Screen starts automatically; Timer program appears as second program.

### While Using Another Function

- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

### Advanced

-   Opening/editing/deleting Timer details  Opening/deleting/playing Timer log records  Customizing TV Alarm settings  Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (P.7-18)



## Time Shift Recording & Playback

Record current program temporarily for delayed playback.

- Recorded content is deleted after playback.
- First, insert Memory Card.

### 1 While watching TV, (Long) ➔ Recording starts



Recording in progress

### 2 While recording, (Long) ➔ Playback starts

- Playback starts from where recording was started.
- Recording and playback stop when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.

**Tuning in a Second Program during Time Shift Playback**

 ➔ **Two Screen** ➔  ➔ **Activate Two Screen** ➔ 

### Major Playback Operations

Fast Forward	
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	

\* Press  to resume normal Time Shift playback.

### Time Shift Recording Automatic Activation

When a Voice Call is answered while watching TV with Memory Card inserted, Time Shift recording starts automatically; Long Press  after the call for playback.

### Advanced

-  ● Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (P.7-16)



Area & Channel	
Switching reception Areas	While watching TV,  → Select Area → ●
Renaming Areas	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Change Area → ● → Select Area →  → Change Area Name → ● → Enter name → ●
Changing/disabling  function	<b>Start Here</b> While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Channel Key Setting → ● → See below
	<b>Toggle All Receivable Channels By Manual</b> → ● <b>Disabling Disable</b> → ●
Editing channels	<b>Start Here</b> While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → CH Switch → ● → Select channel →  → See below
	<b>Switching Channel Positions Flip</b> → ● → Select target key → ● <b>Deleting Channels Delete</b> → ● → Yes → ●
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Change Area → ● → Select Area →  → Reset Settings → ● → Yes → ●
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Change Area → ● → Select Area →  → Channel Update → ● → Update Further → ●
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Change Area → ● → Select Area →  → Channel Update → ● → Update All → ● → Yes → ●

Watching	
Opening Help	While watching TV,  → Help → ● ● Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	While watching TV,  → OperateProgram → ● → Program Info. Search → ● → Search → ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging display size for portrait position	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → ● → Screen Size → ● → Enlarge → ●
Viewing widescreen images in original size	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → ● → Screen Size → ● → Original Size → ●
Canceling image smoothing	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → ● → Smooth Mode → ● → Off → ●
Saving current channel	While watching TV,  → Set Channels → ● → Save Channel → ● → Select key → ● ● To overwrite a saved channel, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV,  → AV Settings → ● → AV Mode → ● → Select mode → ● ● TV reception time may shorten depending on the mode.



Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> While watching TV,  → <i>AV Settings</i> →  → <i>See below</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change AV Mode (select mode other than <i>Link to Genre</i>) first.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Brightness</b>  <i>Image</i> →  → <i>Brightness</i> →  → Adjust level → </p>
	<p><b>Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor</b>  <i>Image</i> →  → <i>Brightness</i> →  →  (  /  ) → </p>
	<p><b>Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene</b>  <i>Image</i> →  → <i>Control by Scene</i> →  → <i>On(Light)</i> or <i>On</i> → </p>
	<p><b>Other Image-Related Parameters</b>  <i>Image</i> →  → Select item →  → Adjust level → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjust <i>Contrast</i>, <i>Blackness</i> (black level), <i>Color</i> (color density), <i>Tint</i> (skin color tone) and <i>Sharpness</i>.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Restoring Default Image Settings</b>  <i>Image</i> →  → <i>Reset</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → </p>
Changing panel pattern	<p>With TV in portrait,  → <i>Advanced</i> →  → <i>Panel Type</i> →  → Select pattern → </p>
Customizing viewing options for Cycloid position	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> With TV in landscape,  → <i>Advanced</i> →  → <i>Set Landscape</i> →  → <i>See below</i></p> <p><b>Showing Indicators Always</b>  <i>Display Icon</i> →  → <i>On</i> → </p> <p><b>Disabling Partial Image Enlargement</b>  <i>Magnify Area</i> →  → <i>Off</i> → </p>

Switching One Seg services	<p>While watching TV,  → <i>Set Channels</i> →  → <i>Select Serv. Station</i> →  → Select service → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available for programs with multiple services.</li> </ul>
Listening to audio from Speaker	<p>While watching TV,  → <i>Advanced</i> →  → <i>Sound Output</i> →  → <i>Loudspeaker</i> → </p>
Using wireless Headphones	<p>While watching TV,  (Long)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.</li> </ul>
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	<p>While watching TV,  → <i>Advanced</i> →  → <i>Auto Exit</i> →  → <i>Auto Exit Time</i> →  → Select time → </p>
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	<p>While watching TV,  → <i>Advanced</i> →  → <i>Auto Exit</i> →  → <i>Close Action</i> →  → <i>Watch TV</i> → </p>
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p><b>[Start Here]</b>  → <i>TV</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Calls &amp; Alarms</i> →  → <i>See below</i></p> <p><b>Showing Alarm Notice</b>  <i>Alarm</i> →  → <i>Alarm Notice</i> → </p> <p><b>Showing Calls or SI Circle Talk Requests</b>  Select item →  → <i>Notice a Call</i> → </p> <p><b>Showing New Message Window</b>  <i>Incoming Message</i> →  → <i>Calls &amp; Alarms</i> → </p>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<p> → <i>TV</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  →  <i>Sound Output</i> →  → <i>Bluetooth Device</i> → </p>



Two Screen	
Using Picture-in-Picture	While watching TV,  → <b>Two Screen</b> →  → <b>Set Two Screen</b> →  →  → <b>Sub Screen</b> →  →
Canceling second program channel selection	While watching TV,  → <b>Two Screen</b> →  → <b>CH Op. OtherTVList</b> →  →  → <b>Off</b> →  → • When <b>Off</b> , main program channel selection is active.
Data Broadcast	
Changing view	With Data Broadcast in portrait,  →  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Change View (Data)</b> →  → • To return to TV window, press .
Returning to initial window	With Data Broadcast in portrait,  →  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Back to Top</b> →  →
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	<b>[Start Here]</b> While watching TV,  →  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Delete StationData</b> →  →  → <b>See below</b> <b>Deleting by Station</b> Select station →  → <b>Delete</b> →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →  →
	<b>Deleting All</b> → <b>Delete All</b> →  →  → Enter Handset Code →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →  →
Hiding Network connection confirmation	While watching TV,  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Notify Connection</b> →  →  → <b>Off</b> →  →

Sending/hiding Location Information	<b>[Start Here]</b> While watching TV,  →  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Location</b> →  →  → <b>See below</b> <b>Sending Always</b> <b>On</b> →  →
	<b>Hiding Always</b> <b>Off</b> →  →
Hiding manufacture number and other information	While watching TV,  →  → <b>SetBroadcastData</b> →  →  → <b>Manufacture Number</b> →  →  → <b>Off</b> →  →

## TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source →  → • Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	<b>[Start Here]</b> →  → <b>TV</b> →  →  → <b>TV Link</b> →  →  → <b>See below</b> <b>Opening TV Links</b> Select link →  → • Connection fees may apply.
	<b>Opening Properties</b> Select link →  →  → <b>Details</b> →  →
Deleting TV links	<b>[Start Here]</b> →  → <b>TV</b> →  →  → <b>TV Link</b> →  →  → <b>See below</b> <b>One Entry</b> Select link →  →  → <b>Delete</b> →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →  →
	<b>All Entries</b> → <b>Delete All</b> →  →  → Enter Handset Code →  →  → <b>Yes</b> →  →



## Subtitle &amp; Sound

## Changing subtitle settings

**[Start Here]** While watching TV,  ⇒ **Subtitle/Sound** ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**

- May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, Two Screen usage pattern, etc.).

**Showing Subtitles Always**

**Display Subtitle** ⇒ ● ⇒ **On** ⇒ ●

**Hiding Subtitles Always**

**Display Subtitle** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Off** ⇒ ●

**Changing Subtitle Language**

**Subtitle Language** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Language 2** ⇒ ●

**Showing Subtitle Area Always**

**Auto Subtitle Off** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Off** ⇒ ●

**Showing Subtitles at the Top**

**Subtitle Position** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Upper** ⇒ ●

**Increasing Subtitle Lines**

**Subtitle ScrollMode** ⇒ ● ⇒ **On** ⇒ ●

## Changing sound settings

**[Start Here]** While watching TV,  ⇒ **Subtitle/Sound** ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**

**Selecting Sound Option**

**Sound Type** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Sound2** ⇒ ●

- Available when multiple sounds are supported.

**Listening to Sub Language**

**Sound Channel** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Sub** ⇒ ●

**Listening to Main & Sub Languages**

**Sound Channel** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Main + Sub** ⇒ ●

## Recording

## Recording programs without Data Broadcasts

While watching TV,  ⇒ **SetBroadcastData** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Set Recording** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Image Only** ⇒ ●

## Saving Data Broadcast images to handset

While watching TV,  ⇒ **SetBroadcastData** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Image Location** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Phone Memory** ⇒ ●

## Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation

● ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Set Call Time Shift** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Off** ⇒ ●

## Recording programs to handset

● ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Save Recording to** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Phone Memory** ⇒ ●



## Recorded Programs

## ■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback,  →  →  →  →  →
Playing files repeatedly	→  →  →
Playing split files	→  →  →
Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	→  →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During playback, press  to switch sound channels [L (Main), R (Sub) or L + R (Main + Sub)]. (Available for programs supporting sub language.) For more operations, see P.9-6 "Video Playback Operations."</li> <li>• In Recorder Contents file list, press  to rename files, change playback mode (repeat, random, etc.), check memory status, open properties or delete files.</li> </ul>

## ■ Managing

Checking memory status	→  →
Renaming files	→  →  →  →
Deleting files	→  →  →
	<b>Single Files</b> Select file →  →  →
	<b>All Files</b> →  →  →
Copying files to Memory Card	→  →  →  →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit.</li> </ul>
Moving files to Memory Card	→  →  →  →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Files moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.</li> </ul>
Opening file properties	→  →  →



## Markers

Playing files with Markers	[Start Here] During playback → See below
	<b>Skipping between Markers</b> (Long) or  (Long)
	<b>Moving to Specific Markers</b> -
Using Marker List	[Start Here] During playback,  → Set Marker →  → Marker List →  → See below
	<b>Starting Playback</b> Select number →
	<b>Deleting a Marker</b> Select number →  → Delete →
	<b>Deleting All Markers</b> → Delete All →  → Yes →

## TV Timer &amp; TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/deleting Timer details	[Start Here] While watching TV,  → Rec./TimeShift →  → Reservation List →  → See below
	<b>Opening Entries</b> Select entry →
	<b>Editing Entries</b> Select entry →  → Edit →  → Edit → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.</li> </ul>
	<b>Deleting Entries</b> Select entry →  → Delete →  → Yes →

## Opening/deleting/playing Timer log records

[Start Here] While watching TV, → Rec./TimeShift → → Reservation List → → → See below

## Opening Timer Log

Select record →

## Playing Recorded Programs

Select record →

## Deleting Records

Select record → → Yes →

## Customizing TV Alarm settings

[Start Here] While watching TV, → Rec./TimeShift → → Reservation List → → → TV Alarm → → See below

## Changing TV Alarm Time

Alarm Time → → Select time →

## Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light

Alarm, Vibration or Light → → Off →

## Changing Duration

Duration → → Select time →

## Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

→ TV → → Settings → → TV Reserve Prior → → Off →



## Watching

### ? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

### ? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

### ? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

## Recording

### ? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup> file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

## TV Recording Timer

### ? *Could not start recording. appeared as recording result*

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

### ? *Recording aborted. appeared as recording result*

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



<b>Camera</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
Getting Started .....	8-2
Photo Camera & Video Camera	
Overview .....	8-3
<b>Photo Camera</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
Capturing Still Images .....	8-5
Selecting Camera by Use .....	8-8
Changing & Saving Camera Settings	
.....	8-11
Registering Faces (Detect Personal)	
.....	8-14
<b>Video Camera</b> .....	<b>8-16</b>
Recording Video .....	8-16

<b>Opening Files</b> .....	<b>8-18</b>
Opening Saved Images via Album ...	8-18
Opening Saved Files via Review ....	8-21
<b>Editing Images</b> .....	<b>8-22</b>
Picture Editor .....	8-22
Composite .....	8-25
<b>Printing</b> .....	<b>8-26</b>
Printing Images .....	8-26
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>8-27</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>8-33</b>

# 8

## Camera & Imaging



## Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

### Detect Personal

Register faces; related information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection.

### Continuous AF

Focus continuously adjusts as the framed subject's position changes.

### Select Camera

943SH is loaded with preset camera modes tailored for various purposes/occasions; select a camera mode to suit subject/shooting conditions.

### Album

Sort saved images into up to 500 albums; create original albums as needed.

### Important Mobile Camera Usage Notes

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.

### Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

### Shutter Click

- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

### Cycloid Position

- Activate mobile camera and rotate Display to Cycloid position to capture images/record in wideview.
  - Image/recording size changes accordingly.

### Advanced

- Changing function assigned to Camera Key () ● Opening Help (P.8-27)



## Photo Camera & Video Camera Overview

Focus modes and sizes shown below are defaults (sizes are for portrait position); those with \* are fixed.

		Description	Focus Mode	Size
Standard Shooting	Easy Auto Camera	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings partially changeable)	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Pro Auto Camera	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings mostly changeable)	Normal(Portrait)	8M
	Quick Camera	Capture distant scenery quickly	Manual Focus*	3M
Subject & Conditions	Scene Cameras	Select one according to subject/shooting conditions	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Monochrome Camera	Capture black and white images	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Sepia Camera	Capture sepia images	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Long Exposure Camera	Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.)	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
Specific Objectives	Wallpaper Camera	Show mock Clock/Calendar in Viewfinder to capture image and set it as Wallpaper	Normal(Portrait)	Wallpaper*
	Auction Camera	Use guide to capture multiple images for posting on auction sites	Center Auto Focus	VGA
	Messaging Camera	Capture and send images via mail easily	Normal(Portrait)*	VGA
	Blog Camera	Capture and post images to blogs easily	Normal(Portrait)	VGA



		Description	Focus Mode	Size
Auto Shutter Release	Look Back Camera	Play whistle sound and release shutter automatically when subject turns face to camera	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Smile Camera	Release shutter automatically when subject smiles	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
	Self Timer Camera	Release shutter automatically after selected time elapses	Normal(Portrait)*	8M
Special Shooting	Shooting Camera	Capture up to nine images consecutively	Normal(Portrait)	Wallpaper
	Panorama Camera	Capture panoramic images of scenery, etc.	Center Auto Focus	—
	Scanner Camera	Move handset to scan the area to capture	Center Auto Focus	Free
Additional Cameras	Pretty Arrange Camera	Touch up faces in captured images	Normal(Portrait)*	3M
	Self Portrait Camera	Use guide to capture self portraits	Normal(Portrait)*	3M
	Face Register Camera	Register name and note for faces	Normal(Portrait)*	VGA*
Video Camera	Fine Video Camera	Record long high quality video	Auto Focus	Wide
	Video Camera for Mail	Record short video easily to send it via mail	Auto Focus	QCIF



## Capturing Still Images

Follow these steps to capture someone's image using **Easy Auto Camera**:

### 1 ➔ Frame subject on Display



Photo Viewfinder

- Focus is locked on faces automatically for Easy Auto Camera, Pro Auto Camera, etc. (Portrait auto focus)
  - When multiple faces are detected, frame appears on each face; use  to select one on which to lock focus.
  - Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.

### 2



Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image is saved.
- Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.

### 3

- Viewfinder returns.

### 4

- ➔ **Camera shuts down**

#### Sending Captured Images at High Speed via Infrared

[Captured Image Window]  (Long)  
➔ **Yes or No** ➔ 

- Set recipient device to ready beforehand.

Sending Captured Images via Mail  
[Captured Image Window]  ➔  
**Complete message** ➔ 

#### Detect Personal

- Register name, note, etc. for faces; entered information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection.

#### Mobile Light

- Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level or camera mode. Follow these steps to turn setting off:

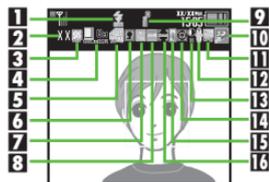
[Photo Viewfinder]  ➔ **Mobile Light** ➔  ➔ **Off** ➔ 

### Advanced

-  ● Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval ● Changing image size ● Changing focus frame design ● Changing shutter click sound ● Changing save location ● Changing Mobile Light mode (And more on **P.8-27 - 8-28**)



## Photo Viewfinder Indicators



1	Mobile Light	9	Remote Shutter
2	Memory	10	Background Save
3	Picture Quality		Save to
4	Picture Size	11	Auto Save
5	Continuous Type	12	Image Orientation
	Long Exposure	13	Exposure
6	Scene	14	Focus
7	ISO Sensitivity	15	Shake Reducing
	Self-timer	16	Shutter Mode
8	White Balance		

## Showing Large Indicators

Press in Photo Viewfinder to show large indicators along the edges of Display.



Press to toggle indicator view (Icon On, Icon Off and Guidance).

## Accessing Settings via Indicators

While indicators appear, use to select function

- Press to toggle functions.

## Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	(Long)
Adjust Brightness	
Change Image Size	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Open Help	

Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

## Advanced

- Correcting portrait auto focus images (And more on P.8-29)

## Focus Lock

Lock focus on subject; camera continuously focuses on the subject even if it moves. Chase Focus tracks the subject's movement, and Continuous AF adjusts focus as the distance to the subject changes.

### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display



- Focus Lock is set.



- Captured image appears.
- Press to return to Viewfinder.

#### Canceling Focus Lock

- Press .

#### Chase Focus

- Camera distinguishes the subject by color; light-colored subjects or subjects having the same color as the background may not be tracked correctly.

## Image Size & Print/Display Size

943SH Picture Size & Corresponding Print/Display Size:

<b>8M</b>	A4 prints
<b>5M</b>	B5 prints
<b>3M</b>	L to 2L prints
<b>Full HD</b>	Full HD display wallpaper*
<b>Wallpaper</b>	943SH Wallpaper
<b>VGA</b>	VGA display wallpaper*
<b>QVGA</b>	QVGA display wallpaper*

\*For image specifications, see **P.17-20** "Photo Camera."

#### Auto Resize Zoom

- At **8M**, Picture Size changes with zoom scale (print quality may be affected); check the size on indicator before image capture.



## Selecting Camera by Use

### Switching Cameras

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder,   **Switch Camera**  



- Alternatively, in Main Menu, **Camera**  **Various Cameras** to select camera.

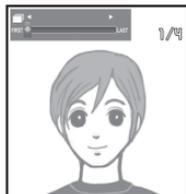
- 2 **Select camera**  

- Selected camera activates.
- For subsequent operations, see "Using Selected Camera."

### Using Selected Camera

#### Shooting Camera

- 1 **Frame subject on Display**  



- After image capture, the first preview image appears.

- 2  **(Long)**
  - All captured images are saved.

#### Saving Selected Images

- After ,  **(select image)**  

#### Look Back Camera

- 1 **Frame subject on Display**  
  - Whistle sound plays.

- 2 **Face detection activates, and shutter releases; image appears**

- 3 
  - Viewfinder returns.

#### Smile Camera

- 1 **Frame subject on Display**
- 2 **Smile detection activates, and shutter releases; image appears**

- 3 
  - Viewfinder returns.

### Advanced

-   Adjusting smile detection level  Changing continuous shooting mode  Changing Look Back Camera sound (P.8-28)

### Self Timer Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



- Countdown starts.

#### 2 Shutter releases after approximately ten seconds; image appears



- Viewfinder returns.

### Wallpaper Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



- Wallpaper preview appears.



- Image is set as Wallpaper.  
(Viewfinder returns.)

### Auction Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



- First preview image appears.



- Repeat 1 - 2 to capture two more images following onscreen instructions.



### Messaging Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



- Mail Composition window opens.  
Complete and send message.

### Pretty Arrange Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



- Face is touched up.



- Viewfinder returns.

#### Adjusting Each Effect Separately

After 2, 1: (Small Face), 2: (Cute Eyes) or 3: (Fair Skin) → ⊕

#### Editing Images

After 1, 1: → ⊕

- For more, see P.8-22 "Picture Editor."

## Advanced

- Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval (P.8-27)
- Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera (P.8-28)



### ■ Panorama Camera

#### 1 Frame subject on Display



#### 2 Move handset slowly to keep + aligned with either of yellow lines



- Captured image is saved.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar (  ) turns blue.

### ■ Self Portrait Camera

#### 1 Turn handset around and look into the lens

#### 2 Face detection activates, tones sound, and shutter releases; image appears



- Viewfinder returns.

#### Changing Frame Size & Position

[Photo Viewfinder]  ➔ *Set Face Recog. Area* ➔  ➔ *Select option* ➔ 

- Select *for Pair Shot* to automatically release shutter upon detection of two faces within the white frame.
- Alternatively, press  in Photo Viewfinder to toggle frame size/position.

### ■ Additional Cameras

Scene Cameras	
Monochrome Camera	Frame subject on Display ➔ 
Sepia Camera	
Long Exposure Camera	Frame subject on Display ➔  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shutter is left open for approximately 30 seconds before image capture.</li> </ul>
Blog Camera	Frame subject on Display ➔  ➔  ➔ Proceed with blogging
Scanner Camera	Frame subject on Display ➔  ➔ Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture ➔ 

### Advanced

-   Changing panorama/scanner settings  Previewing panorama image  Changing panorama image preview method  Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera (P.8-29)



## Changing & Saving Camera Settings

Change settings according to purpose/shooting conditions; save frequently used settings as **My Camera** for future use.

- Some settings may be unavailable depending on camera mode (no corresponding indicators appear).
- For setting procedures, see **P.8-27 - 8-28**. In addition to these, there are settings unique to each tailored camera.

### Major Items

		Description
Focus	Focus Mode	Select from <b>Normal(Portrait)</b> , <b>Center Auto Focus</b> , <b>Spot Auto Focus</b> , <b>Macro</b> and <b>Manual Focus</b>
	Continuous AF	Select whether to adjust focus continuously as focus-locked subject's position changes
	Chase Focus	Select whether to track focus-locked subject automatically as it moves within framed image
	Focus Mark	Select focus frame design from <b>Pattern 1</b> to <b>Pattern 6</b>
Shutter	Self-timer	Select <b>10 sec.</b> , <b>5 sec.</b> , <b>2 sec.</b> or <b>Off</b>
	Shutter Mode	Select from <b>Normal</b> (manual), <b>Egao</b> (smile detection) and <b>Furimuki</b> (face detection)
	Shutter Sound	Select shutter click sound from <b>Pattern 1</b> to <b>Pattern 3</b>
Image Size & Quality	Picture Size	Select image size from <b>8M(2448x3264)</b> to <b>QVGA(240x320)</b> (Portrait) or from <b>3M(2048x1536)</b> to <b>QVGA(320x240)</b> (Landscape)
	Picture Quality	Select image quality from <b>High Quality</b> , <b>Fine</b> and <b>Normal</b>



		Description
Conditions	ISO Sensitivity	Select light sensitivity from <b>Auto</b> (~800) to <b>Auto(High)</b> (~12800) and <b>100</b> to <b>12800</b>
	White Balance	Select <b>Auto</b> , <b>Daylight</b> , <b>Cloud/Shade</b> , <b>Tungsten</b> or <b>Fluorescent</b> according to lighting conditions
	Exposure	Select amount of light received by camera from <b>-2</b> to <b>+2</b>
	Mobile Light	Select Mobile Light mode from <b>On</b> , <b>Automatic</b> , <b>Low Light</b> and <b>Off</b>
Save Settings	Save Pictures to	Select <b>Memory Card Priority</b> , <b>Memory Card Fixed</b> , <b>Phone Memory</b> , <b>DCIM</b> or <b>Ask Each Time</b>
	Auto Save	Select <b>ON(Preview Off)</b> , <b>On(Preview 2 sec.)</b> , <b>On(Preview Manual)</b> or <b>Off</b>
	Background Save	Select whether to enable quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images
Other	Shake Reducing	Select shake reduction option from <b>Auto</b> , <b>Auto(Strong)</b> and <b>Off</b>
	Display Setting	Select indicator view from <b>Guidance</b> , <b>Icon On</b> and <b>Icon Off</b>
	Set Send Key	Select send option assigned to 



## Changing Settings

Example: Picture Size

### 1 In Photo Viewfinder,



### 2 Picture Size

### 3 Select size

- Viewfinder returns.

## Saving Changed Settings

After image capture, save changed settings with a name and captured image; load saved settings in the same manner as switching cameras.

May be unavailable depending on camera mode.

### Saving as My Camera

### 1 In captured image window,

  **Save as My Camera**



- Messages appear.

### 2 Specify image area



- The specified portion will be used as the camera's icon.

### 3

### 4 My Camera Name:

### 5 Enter name

### 6

- My Camera is created.

### Entering Information

After  Note:    Enter text 



### Using My Cameras

### 1 In Photo Viewfinder,

**Switch Camera**  

### 2 Select My Camera

## Advanced

-   Deleting My Cameras  Editing My Cameras (P.8-29)



## Registering Faces (Detect Personal)

Register faces; related information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection, and captured images are sorted into albums (Person) when saved.

- Register name, note and priority for up to ten faces.
- When multiple registered faces are detected, focus is locked to one with highest priority.



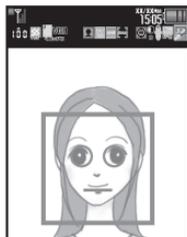
Viewfinder Information

### Saving Entries

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder,
- 2 *Detect Personal*
- 3 *Register Face*

Face in @Guide frame when in frame red, take a picture.

- 4 Use guide to find best position



- Guide turns red when face is detected.

5



- Window shown above opens when face is recognized correctly; if not, repeat 4 - 5.

- 6 *Empty*
- 7 *Name:*
- 8 *Enter name*





- Entry is saved.
- The lower the entry number the higher the priority.

#### Entering Information

After ③, *Note:* → ● → Enter text → ● → ③

#### Setting Text Color

After ③, *Font Color:* → ● → Select color → ● → ③

- Upon face detection, Viewfinder information appears in the selected color.

#### Editing Entries

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder,
- 2 *Detect Personal* → ● → *Edit Face* → ●



Edit Face Window

- 3 Select entry → ●



- 4 Select item → ● → Edit in the same manner as saving entries



- Entry is overwritten.

#### Deleting/Moving Entries

Follow these steps to delete an entry:

- 1 In Edit Face window, select entry →
  - 2 *Delete* → ● → *Yes* → ●
- Entry is deleted.

#### Moving Entries (Changing Priorities)

After ①, *Change Priority* → ● → Select target location → ●

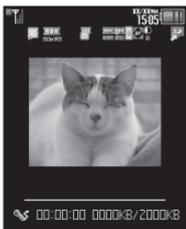


## Recording Video

Follow these steps to record short video using *Video Camera for Mail*:

1 → **Camera** →

2 **Video Camera for Mail** →



Video Viewfinder  
(Video Camera for Mail)

3 **Frame subject on Display**



- Recording starts after a tone.

4



5 **Save** →

- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.

6 → **Camera shuts down**

### Playing Unsaved Video

In , **Preview** →

### Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

### If Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

### Switching Video Cameras

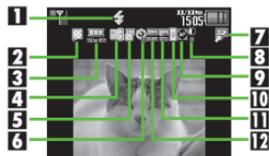
[Video Viewfinder] → **Simple Setting** → → **Select video camera** →

### Advanced

- Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots
- Changing image quality
- Activating Mobile Light
- Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)
- Changing recording size (And more on **P.8-30**)



## Video Viewfinder Indicators



<b>1</b>	Mobile Light	<b>7</b>	Save to
<b>2</b>	Video Quality	<b>8</b>	Exposure
<b>3</b>	Record Size	<b>9</b>	Focus
<b>4</b>	Memory for still image capture	<b>10</b>	Shake Reducing
<b>5</b>	Record Time	<b>11</b>	Audio Encode
<b>6</b>	Self-timer	<b>12</b>	Video Encode

## Operations in Video Viewfinder

<b>Zoom In/Out</b>	
<b>Toggle Mode</b>	(Long)
<b>Adjust Brightness</b>	
<b>Toggle Mobile Light Mode</b>	
<b>Change Quality</b>	
<b>Pause/Resume Recording</b>	While Recording,
<b>Capture Still Images</b>	While Recording,
<b>Cancel Recording (Start Over)</b>	
<b>Open Help</b>	

Fine Video Camera only. (May be unavailable depending on recording size.)

Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.



## Opening Saved Images via Album

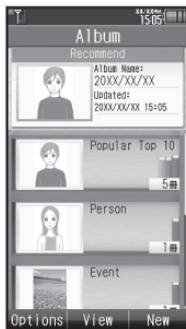
### Basics

Handset sorts saved images into up to 500 albums of the following preloaded categories automatically; create original albums as needed.

<b>Person</b>	Stores portraits sorted into albums by face registered via Detect Personal
<b>Event</b>	Stores images sorted into albums by period scheduled in Calendar
<b>By Camera</b>	Stores images sorted into albums by camera mode
<b>By Date</b>	Stores images sorted into albums by captured date

### Album Images & Source Files

- Album stores only file locations. (Source files are saved in Data Folder.) Images disappear from Album if source files are deleted.



A single image can be sorted into multiple categories (e.g., a portrait captured using a specific camera is stored in **By Camera** and **Person**). In addition, a single image with multiple registered faces will be stored in each subject's album in **Person**.

### Opening Albums

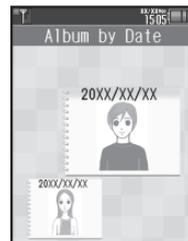
#### 1 (Long)



Album Window

- **Recommend** shows a recently updated album.
- **Popular Top 10** stores ten most frequently opened albums.

#### 2



Album List

- Albums within appear.



### 3 Select album →



Image List

### 4 Select image

### 5

- Image appears.

#### Opening Latest Album

After 1,

#### Slide Show

After 2, select album → → Slide Show →

#### Copying/Moving Images to Other Albums

After 4, → Past Other Album (or Re-Past Other Album) → → Select category → → Select album →

- Images in By Date or By Camera albums cannot be moved (*Re-Past Other Album* does not appear).

## Creating Original Albums

Create new albums by selecting sort keys (from Person, Event and By Camera) and specifying date and time.

Follow these steps to create an album by selecting sort keys from Person and By Camera:

### 1 In Album window, → Create Original Album →



### 2 Choose Portrait →

### 3 Select entry →



- Repeat 3 to complete selection.

### 4

### 5 Select Camera type →

### 6 Select camera →



- Repeat 5 to complete selection.

### 7

### 8 Create Album →

### 9 Enter name →

### 10 Yes →

#### Previewing Created Album

After 7, Album Preview →

- To return, press .

#### Editing Sort Keys

[Album List] Select album → → Edit Auto Sort Keys → → Select item → → Edit →



## Editing Albums

Some albums may not be edited.

## Renaming Albums

- 1 In Album window or album list, select album →
- 2 Change Album Name →
- 3 Enter name →

## Adding Images

Not available for By Date or By Camera albums.

- 1 In album list, select album →
- 2 Add Picture →



- 3 Select folder →

- For *DCIM Folder*, select a folder and press .

- 4 Select image →

## Adding Images via Data Folder

- → *Data Folder* → → *Pictures* or *DCIM* → → Select image →
- → *Save to Album* → → Select category → → Select album →
- For *DCIM*, select a folder and press .

## Deleting Albums

- 1 In album list, select album →
- 2 Delete →
- 3 Yes →

## Adding Comments to Images

- 1 In image list, select image →
- 2 Edit Comment →
- 3 Enter text →



- Entered text appears in image list.

## Other Editing Options

- Album image handling is similar to that of Data Folder. For more information, see the chapter "Data Folder & Memory Card."

## Advanced

- Changing album covers
- Sorting albums
- Unlocking Secret Data Folder temporarily
- Opening album properties
- Removing images from albums
- Deleting images (P.8-31)

## Opening Saved Files via Review

### Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file;  
access older files as needed.

- 1 ➔ **Camera** ➔
- 2 **Review** ➔



Review Window

- To end Review, press .

### Enlarging Images

After ,

### Pausing/Resuming Video

After , (press to pause/resume)

### Opening Help

[Review Window]

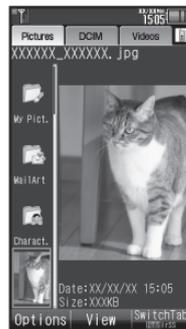
### Opening from Viewfinder

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder]

(Long)

### Accessing Older Files

- 1 In Review window,



Review File List

- File list appears.
- Press to toggle lists.

- 2 **Select file** ➔
- File opens/plays.



## Picture Editor

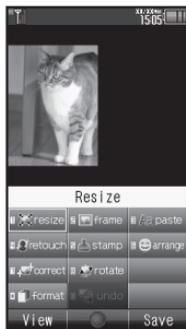
### Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

<b>Resize</b>	Select from preset sizes or crop image
<b>Frame</b>	Add Frame to images
<b>Paste</b>	Add text/dates to images
<b>Retouch</b>	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
<b>Stamp</b>	Add stamps to images
<b>Face Arrange</b>	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
<b>Correction</b>	Correct images
<b>Rotate</b>	Rotate images
<b>File Format</b>	Convert file format and change file size

### Basic Operation

- 1 → **Data Folder** →
- 2 **Pictures** → → **Select image** →
- 3 → **Edit** →
- 4 **Picture Editor** →



Picture Editor Menu

- 5 **Select effect** → → **Edit**
  - To start over, press .
- 6 **When finished**,
- 7 **Save as New** →
  - To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)
- 8 **Enter name** → → **Save here** →

### Canceling Effects

- After** , **Undo** →
- To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

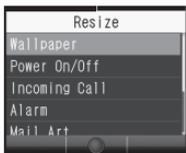


## Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

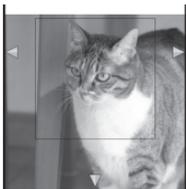
### Resize to Preset Size

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Resize** ➔ ●



Resize Window

- 2 Select size ➔ ●
- 3 ● Specify image area



- If crop frame does not appear, omit 3.

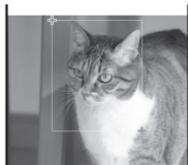
- 4 ●
  - Editing is complete.

### Zooming In/Out

After 3, 4 ➔ ● ➔ 4

### Cropping Images

- 1 In Resize window, **Cut** ➔ ●
- 2 ● Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➔ ●



- 3 ● Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➔ ●

- 4 ●
  - Editing is complete.

### Specifying Image Area

After 3, 4 ➔ ● ➔ 4

### Zooming In/Out

After 3, 4 ➔ ● ➔ 4

## Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Retouch** ➔ ●
- 2 Select effect ➔ ●
- 3 ●
  - Editing is complete.

## Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Frame** ➔ ●
- 2 Select frame ➔ ●
- 3 ●
  - Editing is complete.

## Advanced

- Using additional editing options (P.8-31)



## Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Face Arrange** ➔ ●



Face Arrange Menu

- 2 Select type ➔ ●

- 3 ●

• Editing is complete.

## Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

## Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

- 1 In Face Arrange menu, ●

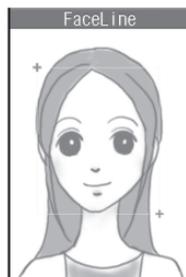


- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

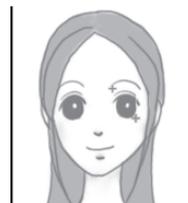
- 2 ● Move + to top left of face



- 3 ● Move + to bottom right of face



- 4 ●



- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

- 5 ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **Save here** ➔ ●

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



# Composite

## Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

<b>Split Picture</b>	Combine up to four reduced images into one
<b>Merge Panorama</b>	Combine two still images into one

## Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

<b>Near View</b>	Best suited for close-up shots
<b>Document</b>	Use for images with text
<b>Standard</b>	Apply to other images

- 1 → **Data Folder** →
- 2 **Pictures** → → **Select image** →
- 3 → **Edit** →
- 4 **Composite** →

## 5 Merge Panorama →



- File selected in 2 is set as left image.

## 6 <Empty> → → **Select image** →

## 7 EFFECT → → **Select effect** →

- Editing is complete.

## 8 When finished,

- Merged image appears.

## 9

## 10 Enter name → → **Save here** →

### Changing Images

After 7, select image → → → →

Select image →

### Switching Image Positions

After 6,

## Advanced

- Combining reduced images (P.8-32)



# Printing Images

## Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services. DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

- 1 → **Settings** → →
- 2 **Memory Card** → →   
**DPOF** →
- 3 **Number of Copies** →
- 4 **For Each Picture** → →   
**Select folder** →

## 5 Select image →



## 6 Enter a number of copies to print →

- For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

## 7

**Applying a Number to All Images**  
In 4, **For All Pictures** → → Enter a number of copies to print →

**Canceling Specified Number**  
In 6, enter 00 → →

**Viewing Current Print Settings**  
In 6, **Check Settings** →

## Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.

- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

## 1 → **Data Folder** → → **Pictures** →

## 2 Select image → → **Print** →

## 3 **Via Bluetooth** → → **Select printer** →

## 4 **Yes** →

- To cancel, press .

**When Authorization Code is Required**  
Enter Authorization Code →

### Advanced

Changing print settings (P.8-32)

## General

Changing function assigned to Camera Key (Fn)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Camera → ● → Set Camera Key → ●</li> <li>→ Select function → ●</li> </ul>
---	--

## Photo Camera

Some functions may be unavailable or accessible via a different menu path depending on camera mode.

Opening Help	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Help → ●
Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	<p>In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to <b>On</b> beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.</li> </ul>
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Shutter Settings → ● → Set Remote Shutter → ● → Off → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.</li> </ul>

## Photo Camera Settings (General)

Selecting Self-timer time/ repeat interval	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Self-timer → ● → Select time → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For Self Timer Camera, select time or repeat interval.</li> </ul>
Changing image size	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Picture Size → ● → Select size → ●</p>
Setting Center Auto Focus	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Center Auto Focus → ●</p>
Specifying point of focus manually	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Spot Auto Focus → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● A frame appears on Display; use  to move frame over target point of focus.</li> </ul>
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Macro → ●</p>
Adjusting focus manually	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Manual Focus → ● → Adjust focus → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To readjust focus, press .</li> </ul>
Canceling Continuous AF	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Continuous AF → ● → Off → ●</p>
Canceling Chase Focus	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Chase Focus → ● → Off → ●</p>
Changing focus frame design	<p>In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting → ● → Focus Mark → ● → Select pattern → ●</p>



Releasing shutter when subject smiles	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Shutter Settings</b> <b>Shutter Mode</b> <b>Egao</b>
Adjusting smile detection level	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Shutter Settings</b> <b>Egao level</b> <b>Select level</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower the level when detection is slow.</li> </ul>
Releasing shutter when subject turns face to camera	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Shutter Settings</b> <b>Shutter Mode</b> <b>Furimuki</b>
Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Shutter Settings</b> <b>Shutter Sound</b> <b>Select pattern</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shutter click sounds for continuous shooting and panorama/scanner image capture are fixed.</li> </ul>
Changing image quality	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Picture Quality</b> <b>Select quality</b>
Adjusting light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>ISO Sensitivity</b> <b>Select level</b>
Adjusting image color to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>White Balance</b> <b>Select mode</b>
Adjusting brightness	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Exposure</b> <b>Adjust level</b>
Selecting shake reduction option	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Shake Reducing</b> <b>Select option</b>
Capturing images in low light	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Long Exposure</b> <b>Select time</b>
Switching indicator view	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Display Setting</b> <b>Select option</b>

Selecting send option assigned to	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Settings</b> <b>Set Send Key</b> <b>Short press or Long press</b> <b>Select option</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select send option separately for each key press method.</li> </ul>
Changing save location	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Save Settings</b> <b>Save Pictures to</b> <b>Select option</b>
Selecting automatic save option	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Save Settings</b> <b>Auto Save</b> <b>Select option</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Off</b>, press  after image capture to save.</li> </ul>
Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Save Settings</b> <b>Background Save</b> <b>Off</b>
Changing Mobile Light mode	In Photo Viewfinder, <b>Mobile Light</b> <b>Select mode</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mobile Light goes out automatically after three minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it.</li> <li>Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.</li> </ul>

### ■ Photo Camera Settings (Selected Camera)

Changing continuous shooting mode	In Shooting Camera Viewfinder, <b>Continuous Type</b> <b>Select mode</b>
Changing Look Back Camera sound	In Look Back Camera Viewfinder, <b>Turn Sound</b> <b>Select sound</b>
Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera	In Wallpaper Camera Viewfinder, <b>Clock/Calendar</b> <b>Select type</b>



Changing panorama/scanner settings	<b>Start Here</b> In Panorama Camera or Scanner Camera Viewfinder,  ➔ See below
	<b>Hiding Guides</b> <b>Assisting Lines</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔
	<b>Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture</b> <b>AE-Lock</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enable</b> ➔
Previewing panorama image	After panorama image capture, <b>Preview</b> ➔ • Available when Auto Save is <b>Off</b> .
Changing panorama image preview method	After panorama image capture, <b>Preview</b> ➔ ➔ <b>Select method</b> ➔ • Available when Auto Save is <b>Off</b> .
Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera	In Long Exposure Camera Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Exposure Time</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select time</b> ➔
<b>Correction &amp; Preview</b>	
Correcting portrait auto focus images	<b>Start Here</b> After image capture,  ➔ <b>Correlate to Face</b> ➔  ➔ See below • Available when Auto Save is <b>Off</b> .
	<b>Adjusting Face/Background Brightness</b> <b>Against sun</b> ➔  ➔
	<b>Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions</b> <b>Portrait</b> ➔  ➔
Brightening backlit subjects (Dynamic Range Adjustment)	After image capture, • May be unavailable or require access via <b>D-Range</b> in Options menu depending on Auto Save setting.

Seeking guidance for better shots	After image capture, • Follow onscreen instructions. • May be unavailable depending on Auto Save setting.
Checking image details before saving	After image capture,   -   ( <b>Long</b> ) • Available when Auto Save is <b>Off</b> or <b>On(Preview Manual)</b> . • Use  to see other portions enlarged. Press  to enlarge further. Press  to cancel. • Key Assignments: (Upper Left)  (Upper Center)  (Upper Right) (Center Left)  (Center)  (Center Right) (Lower Left)  (Lower Center)  (Lower Right) • May be unavailable depending on image size, etc.

**My Camera**

Deleting My Cameras	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Switch Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select My Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete My Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔
Editing My Cameras	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <b>Switch Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select My Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit My Camera</b> ➔  ➔ <b>My Camera Name: or Note:</b> ➔  ➔  ➔  ➔



## Video Camera

Opening Help	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Help</b> → ● ● Press  to toggle Help window for indicator descriptions and key assignments.
Selecting Self-timer time	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Self-timer</b> → ● → <b>Select time</b> → ●
Adjusting brightness	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Exposure</b> → ● → <b>Adjust level</b>
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> → ● → <b>Macro</b> → ●
Adjusting focus manually	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Focus Setting</b> → ● → <b>Manual Focus</b> → ● → <b>Adjust focus</b> → ● ● To readjust focus, press .
Locking focus	In Video Viewfinder, ● Frame subject in center of Viewfinder first. ● To start over, press  again.
Changing image quality	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Video Quality</b> → ● → <b>Select quality</b> → ●
Activating automatic saving	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Save Settings</b> → ● → <b>Auto Save</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●
Changing save location	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Save Settings</b> → ● → <b>Save Videos to</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ●

Activating Mobile Light	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Mobile Light</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ● ● Mobile Light goes out automatically after three minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it. ● Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)	<b>While recording</b> , ● Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Review or Data Folder.
Changing recording size	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Record Time/Size</b> → ● → <b>For Message or Extended Video</b> → ● → <b>Select size</b> → ● ● Selectable item depends on camera mode.
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Display Size</b> → ● → <b>Enlarge</b> → ●
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Microphone</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●
Changing video encoding	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Save Settings</b> → ● → <b>Video Encode or Audio Encode</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ● ● Selectable item depends on camera mode.
Disabling shake reduction	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Shake Reducing</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●
Prioritizing video frame rate	In Video Viewfinder,  → <b>Save Settings</b> → ● → <b>Picture Setting</b> → ● → <b>Motion Prior</b> → ●



Album	
Changing album covers	<p>[Start Here] [Long] → Select category → ● → Select album → ● → Change a Cover → ● → See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For By Date albums, only the latest images are available.</li> </ul> <p>Selecting from All Images Within Select Picture List → ● → Select image → ●</p> <p>Using Latest Image Latest Picture → ●</p>
Sorting albums	<p>[Long] → Select category → ● → Select album → ● → Sort → ● → Select option → ●</p>
Unlocking Secret Data Folder temporarily	<p>[Long] → ● → Unlock Temporarily → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</p>
Opening album properties	<p>[Long] → Select category → ● → Select album → ● → Details → ●</p>
Removing images from albums	<p>[Long] → Select category → ● → Select album → ● → Select image → ● → Remove from Album → ● → The Album or All Album → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Album does not appear for images under some categories.</li> </ul>
Deleting images	<p>[Long] → Select category → ● → Select album → ● → Select image → ● → Delete Data → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source files in Data Folder will be deleted.</li> </ul>

## Editing Images

## Picture Editor

Using additional editing options	<p>[Start Here] ● → Data Folder → ● → Pictures → ● → Select file → ● → Edit → ● → Picture Editor → ● → See below</p>
	<p>Changing Text/Outline Color Paste → ● → Select text color → ● → Select outline color → ● → Y</p>
	<p>Adding Text Paste → ● → Free Text → ● → Enter text → ● → Move text → ●</p>
	<p>Adding Dates Paste → ● → Date → ● → Move date → ●</p>
	<p>Adding Stamps Stamp → ● → Select stamp → ● → Move stamp → ●</p>
	<p>Correcting Image Parameters Correction → ● → Select type → ● → ●</p>
	<p>Rotating Images Rotate → ● → Select type → ● → ●</p>
	<p>Converting File Format File Format → ● → File Format → ● → Select format → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.</li> <li>To return to Picture Editor menu, press [Back].</li> </ul>
<p>Changing File Size File Format → ● → File Size → ● → Select size → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing file size may affect image quality.</li> <li>To return to Picture Editor menu, press [Back].</li> </ul>	



## Composite

### Combining reduced images

**Start Here** → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** →  
**Select file** → **Edit** → **Composite** → **See below**

#### Creating Split Picture

**SplitPicture 480x854** or **SplitPicture 240x320** →

→ **<Empty>** → **Select file** →

When finished, → **Enter name** → **Save here** →

- Repeat from selecting **<Empty>** as needed.

#### Previewing Split Picture

While creating Split Picture, → **View Composite** →

#### Changing Images

While creating Split Picture, select image →  
 → **Select another** →

#### Deleting Images

While creating Split Picture, select image →  
 → **Remove** → **Yes** →

## DPOF

### Changing print settings

**Start Here** → **Settings** → **Phone/** →  
 → **Memory Card** → **DPOF** → **See below**

#### Adding Dates to Prints

**Settings** → **Add Date** → **On** →

#### Creating an Index Print

**Settings** → **Index Print** → **On** →

#### Resetting

**Reset Settings** → **Yes** →



## Mobile Camera



### Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
- Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.



### Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

- Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to **Ask Each Time**.



### Display went dark during image capture

- 943SH camera has built-in mechanical shutter and ND filter. Strong shocks to handset during image capture may close mechanical shutter for camera protection, resulting in blank Viewfinder. Reactivate mobile camera to reopen the shutter.



### Image is dark or distorted

- Avoid capturing strong light sources (sun, lamps, etc.) in the background.



### Captured image appears all white

- When Long Exposure is active, images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

## Editing Images



### Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

## DPOF



### Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.



## Photo Camera Terms

### ? Center Auto Focus

- Camera automatically selects center of the framed image as point of focus (P.8-27).

### ? Continuous AF

- Focus continuously adjusts as focus-locked subject's position changes (P.8-7, P.8-27).

### ? Chase Focus

- Focus tracks focus-locked subject as it moves within framed image (P.8-7, P.8-27).

### ? Self-timer

- Releases shutter automatically after selected time elapses (P.8-27).

### ? Long Exposure

- Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) (P.8-10). Stabilize handset to reduce camera shake.

### ? ISO Sensitivity

- Adjust light sensitivity (P.8-28). Higher ISO brightens low light images, but increases noise, making images grainy.

### ? White Balance

- Select a mode (Daylight, Tungsten, Fluorescent, etc.) to adjust image color to lighting conditions (P.8-28).



<b>Videos/Music</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
Accessing Webcasting Sites (Japanese).....	9-2
<b>Media Player</b> .....	<b>9-3</b>
Media Player Basics .....	9-3
<b>Music</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
Playing Music.....	9-5

<b>Video</b> .....	<b>9-6</b>
Playing Video .....	9-6
<b>Playlists</b> .....	<b>9-7</b>
Using Playlists .....	9-7
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>9-12</b>

# 9

## Video & Music



## Accessing Webcasting Sites (Japanese)

Access Yahoo! Streaming and other webcasting sites.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi may be required to use some services/content.
- Read information on the source site.

- 1  ➔ **Videos/Music** ➔ 
  - If an update message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- 2 **Select item** ➔ 
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

### Menu Updates

Information window opens for Videos/Music menu update notice. Follow these steps to open it:

- 1 **In Information window, Menu Update Notif.** ➔ 
- 2 **Yes** ➔ 
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

### Suppressing Information Window for Menu Updates

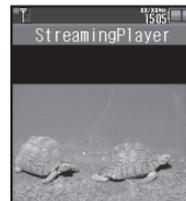
-  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔  **Phone/** 
- ➔ **Video/Music Menu Updates** ➔ 
- ➔ **Notification Off** ➔ 

### Streaming

Most media on webcasting sites are provided as streams; handset plays media while it downloads.

### Playing Media Streams

- 1 **Select file** ➔ 



- Playback starts.
- For playback window description, see P.9-6 "Video Playback Window Description."

### Stopping Playback

During playback,  ➔ **Back** ➔ 

### Playback Sound

- Streaming sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting in Media Player.



## Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 943SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player or transfer files from PCs or AQUOS Blu-ray Disc recorders (hereafter "Blu-ray Disc recorders").
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

### Music File Support

#### My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)  
Downloads/Transferred Files

#### SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)  
Transferred SD-Audio Files

#### WMA

(Memory Card)  
Transferred WMA Files

### Video File Support

#### My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)  
Downloads/Recorded Files

#### Recorder Contents/ SD VIDEO

(Memory Card)  
Transferred SD-Video Files

### Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- If battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.

### Compatibility

- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.



## Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

- 1 **Entertainment** **Media Player**



- 2 **Music or Videos**

- 3 **Download Music or Download Videos**

- Follow the links to download media.

## Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

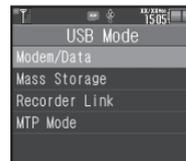
## Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to 943SH-compatible format (P.17-21), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.17-24) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

## Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via compatible software:  
(Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.)

- 1 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**



- 2 **MTP Mode**

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the software's help menu for operational instructions.

- 3 **Yes**
- Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
  - Tools** **Connectivity**
  - USB Mode** **From**
  - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



## Playing Music

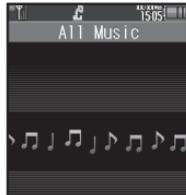
- 1 **Entertainment**
- 2 **Media Player** **Music**
- 3 **My Music** **Select**  
**tab (folder)**



Music Playlists Window

- 4 **All Music**

- 5 **Select file**



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

### Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After , or

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

**Yes**

Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files

In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA**

From

Searching Music Files

After , **Search** Enter  
search text

Lyric Display-Compatible Files

- Press to display lyrics.

### Music Playback Operations

Replay	(Long Press: Rewind)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: Fast Forward)
Volume Down	(Long Press: Mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	
Pause	
Stop	In Pause,
Switch Sound Output	(Long)
Open Help	

\*Release for playback.

### Music Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	7	Volume
3	Track number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

### Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point Specifying start point Playing repeatedly or randomly Changing Sound Effects (And more on P.9-8)



## Playing Video

1 → **Entertainment** →

2 **Media Player** → → **Videos** →

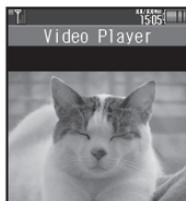
3 **My Videos** → → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** →



Video Playlists Window

4 **All Videos** →

5 **Select file** →



Video Playback Window

6 → **Playback stops**

**Playing Video Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders**

In , **Recorder Contents** → →

**Playing SD VIDEO Files**

In , **SD VIDEO** → →

**Searching Video Files**

After , → **Search** → → Enter search text →

**At Alarm Time**

- Playback pauses.

**Video Recorded on Other Devices**

- Video image may appear rotated.

### Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see P.9-5 "Music Playback Operations."

<b>Replay</b>	(Long Press: Rewind)
<b>Skip Forward</b>	(Long Press in Pause: Advance Frame, Long Press: Fast Forward)
<b>Toggle Display Size</b>	

\*Release for playback.

### Video Playback Window Description



<b>1</b> Title	<b>6</b> Elapsed time
<b>2</b> Author name	<b>7</b> Volume
<b>3</b> Clip number	<b>8</b> Information link
<b>4</b> Status	<b>9</b> Sound Effects
<b>5</b> Playback Mode	

### Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects
- Changing playback size
- Setting Backlight status
- Hiding linked information (P.9-8)



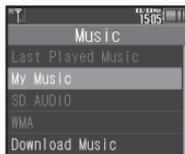
## Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

### Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to **プレイリスト1**:

- 1  → **Entertainment** → 
- 2 **Media Player** →  → **Music** → 



- 3 **My Music** → 
- 4 **All Music** →  → **Select file** → 
- 5 **Add to Playlist** →  → **プレイリスト1** → 

### Renaming Playlists

- 1 **In Playlists window, select Playlist** → 
- 2 **Edit List Title** →  → **Enter name** → 

### Advanced

-  ● Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Opening properties ● Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files ● Deleting All WMA files ● Downloading Contents Keys (P.9-9 - 9-10)
- Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Downloading Contents Keys ● Opening properties ● Deleting SD VIDEO files ● Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders (And more on P.9-10 - 9-11)



## Media Playback

### Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Entertainment ▶ Media Player ▶ Music or Videos ▶ Last Played</li> <li>▶ Music or Last Played Video</li> </ul>
Specifying start point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Time Search</li> <li>▶ Enter time</li> </ul>
Accessing linked information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Access Web Link ▶ Yes</li> </ul>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Entertainment ▶ Media Player ▶ Music or Videos ▶ Settings ▶ Sound Output ▶ Bluetooth Device</li> </ul>

### Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ [Start Here] ▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Playback Mode ▶ See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Repeat One File ▶ Repeat</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Repeat All Files ▶ Repeat All</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Play Randomly ▶ Random</li> <li>▶ Repeat Randomly ▶ Random Repeat</li> </ul>
Changing Sound Effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Sound Effects ▶ Select effect</li> </ul>

### Video

Some functions may be unavailable depending on file.

Playing repeatedly or randomly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ [Start Here] ▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Settings ▶ Playback Mode ▶ See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Repeat One File ▶ Repeat</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Repeat All Files ▶ Repeat All</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Play Randomly ▶ Random</li> </ul>
Changing Sound Effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Settings ▶ Sound Effects ▶ Select effect</li> </ul>
Changing playback size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Settings ▶ Display Size ▶ Select size</li> </ul>
Setting Backlight status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Settings ▶ Backlight ▶ Select option</li> <li>• Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>
Hiding linked information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ During playback, [Start Here] ▶ Settings ▶ Web Link Setting ▶ Off</li> </ul>



## Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Entertainment → Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → See below</p> <p><b>Adding New Playlists</b> Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlists</b> Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b> Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p><b>Changing File Order</b> Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Select target location</p>
	<p>Entertainment → Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → All Music → Sort → Select option</p>
Sorting files	

## Opening properties

**Start Here** → Entertainment → Media Player → Music → See below

## SD AUDIO Files

SD AUDIO → All Music → Select file → Details

## Other Files

My Music → Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → Select file → Details

## Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files

**Start Here** → Entertainment → Media Player → Music → SD AUDIO → See below

## Deleting Single Files

All Music → Select file → Delete Track → Yes

- Source files will be deleted.

## Deleting All Files

All Music → Delete All Tracks → Yes

- Source files will be deleted.

## Editing Title/Artist

All Music → Select file → Edit → Select item → Enter title or name



Deleting All WMA files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player →</li> <li>● → Music → ● → Settings → ● → Delete All WMA → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> <li>• Source files will be deleted.</li> </ul>
Downloading Contents Keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player →</li> <li>● → Music → ● → My Music → ● → ☺</li> <li>Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → ● →</li> <li>Select file (with ) → ● → Yes → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>

## Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player → ● → Videos → ● → My Videos → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Adding New Playlists</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☺ → Add New Playlist → ● → Enter name → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Deleting Playlists</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select Playlist → ☺ → Delete Playlist → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select Playlist → ● → Select file → ☺ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing File Order</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select Playlist → ● → Select file → ☺ → Change Order → ● → Select target location → ●</li> </ul>

Sorting files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player →</li> <li>● → Videos → ● → My Videos → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → All Videos → ● → ☺ → Sort → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Downloading Contents Keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player →</li> <li>● → Videos → ● → My Videos → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → All Videos → ● → Select file (with ) → ● → Yes → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player → ● → Videos → ● → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>SD VIDEO Files</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SD VIDEO → ● → Select file → ☺ → Details → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recorder Contents → ● → Select file → ☺ → Details → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Other Files</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>My Videos → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → Select Playlist → ● → Select file → ☺ → Details → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting SD VIDEO files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player →</li> <li>● → Videos → ● → SD VIDEO → ● → Select file → ☺ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> <li>• Source files will be deleted.</li> </ul>



Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player → ● → Videos → ● → Recorder Contents → ● → Select file → ☰ → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
Checking Memory Card memory status	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player → ● → Videos → ● → Recorder Contents → ● → ☰ → Memory Remaining → ●</p>
Deleting files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → Media Player → ● → Videos → ● → Recorder Contents → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Single Files</b> Select file → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p><b>All Files</b> ☰ → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>



## Music

### ? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs-Tones).

### ? WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

- Did you use 943SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

### ? Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

## Video

### ? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

### ? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.



<b>S! Appli</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Using S! Applications.....	10-2
<b>Mobile Widget</b> .....	<b>10-3</b>
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese).....	10-3

<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>10-6</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>10-10</b>

# 10

## S! Applications & Widgets



## Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 943SH-compatible S! Applications, including games.

- Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use S! Applications over Wi-Fi.

### Remote Control (Familink Remote)

- Use **ファミリンクリモコン for AQUOS** S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

- 1 → **S! Appli** →
- 2 **S! Appli Library** →



S! Appli Library

- 3 **Select application** →

### Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

### Incoming Calls

- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

### Opening S! Appli Notification History

In , **Notification History** →

## Exiting S! Applications

- 1



- 2 **End** →

### Pausing S! Applications

In , **Suspend** →

### Resuming S! Applications

→ **Resume** →

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to exit the S! Application.

## Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications
- Adjusting S! Application sound volume
- Canceling surround effect
- Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions
- Setting S! Application to activate in Standby
- Setting Permissions
- Opening properties
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card
- Changing S! Application settings
- Deleting S! Applications
- Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library
- Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 943SH
- Opening Java™ license information (P.10-6 - 10-7)



## Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/functions immediately from Standby.  
To handle widgets with Icon View, see P.2-12 "Icon View."



Widgets

SI Quick News &  
SI Friend's Status Widget

### Saving Widgets to Standby

Save up to three widgets (excluding *S!*速報ニュース/*S!*ともだち状況, 歩数計 and 家計簿).

1 → → **Paste Icon** →

Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab



2

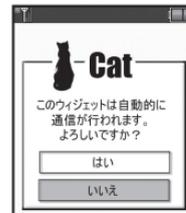
3 **Select widget** →

- Corresponding icon appears.

4 **Specify target location**  
→

### Using Widgets

1 → **Select widget** →



- Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

### Unlocking Temporarily

→ → → **Enter Handset Code** →

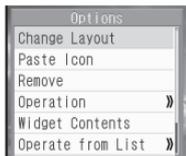
### Advanced

Moving widgets Removing multiple widgets at once Locking widgets (And more on P.10-8)



## Removing Widgets from Standby

1  →  Select widget → 



2 Remove → 

## Obtaining Widgets

1  → **Widget** → 



Mobile Widget Menu

2 **Widget Store** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

## Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:

[Mobile Widget Menu] **Widget Contents** →  → **Select widget** →

 → **Install** →  → **Yes** → 

## Activating Widgets Not Saved in Standby

[Mobile Widget Menu] **Widget Contents** →  → **Select widget** →

 → 

## Deleting Widgets

1 In Mobile Widget menu, **Widget Contents** → 

2 **Select widget** → 

- *SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況*, *歩数計* and *家計簿* cannot be deleted.

3 **Delete** →  → **Yes** → 

## Deleting All Widgets

In , *SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況* →

 → **Delete All** →  → **Enter**

**Handset Code** →  → **Yes** → 

- If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

## Advanced

-   Opening properties
-   Saving widgets to Icon View
-   Slowing pointer speed
-   Opening widget notification history
-   Changing automatic update interval
-   Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan
-   Hiding confirmation outside Japan
-   Disabling widget notifications
-   Disabling cookies
-   Deleting cookies (P.10-8 - 10-9)



## Using Function-Linked Widgets

943SH is preloaded with *S!速報ニュース!ともだち状況* (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget), *歩数計* (Pedometer widget) and *家計簿* (Household Accounts widget).

### S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

#### ■ Setting View Pattern

- 1  ➔  **Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget** ➔ 
- 2 **Settings** ➔  ➔ **Pattern Setting** ➔ 
- 3 **Select item** ➔  (☑) ➔ 

#### ■ Switching View

- 1  ➔  **Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget** ➔ 
- 2 **Operation** ➔  ➔ **Switch Pattern** ➔ 
  - Repeat the steps above to switch the view.

## Pedometer Widget

First, save *歩数計* to Standby.

### ■ Saving Body Information

- 1  ➔  **Select Pedometer widget** ➔ 
- 2 **Settings** ➔  ➔ **Body Info Settings** ➔ 
- 3 **Enter Handset Code** ➔  ➔ **Complete information entry** ➔ 

## Household Accounts Widget

First, save *家計簿* to Standby.

### ■ Opening Household Accounts Window

- 1  ➔  **Select Household Accounts widget** ➔ 

## Advanced

-  ● Adding news items ● Changing news scroll speed ● Showing unread news only ● Assigning members ● Managing members (P.10-9)



S! Applications	
Downloading S! Applications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ●</li> <li>→ Download S! Appli → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● →</li> <li>Application Volume → ● → Adjust level → ●</li> </ul>
Canceling surround effect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● →</li> <li>Surround → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ●</li> <li>→ Calls &amp; Alarms → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Showing Calls</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select item → ● → Show Call Notice → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Incoming Message → ● → Message Priority → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Showing Alarm Notice</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alarm → ● → Alarm Notice → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Notification → ● → Start Notice → ●</li> </ul>

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → S! Appli → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Activating Screensaver</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Setting Screensaver</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Appli Library → ● → Select application → ●</li> <li>☑ → As Screensaver → ●</li> <li>• As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications.</li> <li>• Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Screensaver Activation Time</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● →</li> <li>Activation Time → ● → Enter time → ●</li> </ul>
Setting Permissions	<p><b>Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → ● → Screensaver → ● → Stop Auto Start → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ● → Select application → ☑ →</li> <li>Permission → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select item → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Opening properties	<p><b>Resetting Permission Settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reset Settings → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ●</li> <li>→ Select application → ☑ → Details → ●</li> </ul>



<p>Moving S! Applications to Memory Card</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ● →          (v) → Select application → ● (□/✓) →          Complete selection → ☺ → Move to Card → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press ●.</li> <li>Repeat application selection step, as needed, before pressing ☺.</li> <li>Some S! Applications may not be moved to Memory Card.</li> </ul>
<p>Changing S! Application settings</p>	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ●          → See below</p> <p><b>Activating Notification Setting</b>          Notification Setting → ● → On → ●</p> <p><b>Setting Backlight Status</b>          Backlight → ● → Switch On/Off → ● →          Select option → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul> <p><b>Disabling Backlight Flashing</b>          Backlight → ● → Blink → ● → Off → ●</p> <p><b>Disabling Vibration</b>          Vibration → ● → Off → ●</p>
<p>Deleting S! Applications</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → S! Appli Library → ●          → Select application → ☺ → Delete → ● →          Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Handset Code may be required.</li> <li>Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.</li> </ul>

<p>Restoring default S! Application settings</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● → Set to Default → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>
<p>Restoring default S! Appli Library</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● →          Memory All Clear → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.)</li> <li>Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.</li> </ul>
<p>Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 943SH</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → Settings → ● → Synchronization → ● → Yes → ●</p>
<p>Opening Java™ license information</p>	<p>● → S! Appli → ● → Information → ●</p>



## Mobile Widget

## Operations in Standby

Selecting widget display option	<p>⏻ → ☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Show Widget</b> → ● → <b>Select option</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Always On:</b> Widgets always appear.</li> <li>• <b>On/Off:</b> Press ☰ to show/hide widgets.</li> <li>• <b>Off on Standby Screen:</b> Press ⏻ to show widgets.</li> <li>• <b>Always Off:</b> Widgets do not appear even when ⏻ is pressed. (Reconfigure via <b>Show Widget</b> in Standby Display menu.)</li> </ul>
Moving widgets	<p>⏻ → 🔄 <b>Select widget</b> → ☰ → <b>Change Layout</b> → ● → <b>Specify target location</b> → ●</p>
Moving widgets to front/back	<p>⏻ → 🔄 <b>Select widget</b> → ☰ → <b>Operation</b> → ● → <b>To Front or To Back</b> → ●</p>
Updating view	<p>⏻ → 🔄 <b>Select widget</b> → ☰ → <b>Operation</b> → ● → <b>Update View</b> → ●</p>
Removing multiple widgets at once	<p>⏻ → ☰ → <b>Operate from List</b> → ● → <b>Remove</b> → ● → <b>Select widget</b> → ● (☑) → <b>Complete selection</b> → ☑ → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>
Locking widgets	<p>⏻ → ☰ → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Lock Settings</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</p>

## Managing

Opening properties	<p>● → <b>Widget</b> → ● → <b>Widget Contents</b> → ● → <b>Select widget</b> → ☰ → <b>Details</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select widget other than <i>SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況歩数計</i> or <i>家計簿</i>.</li> </ul>
Saving widgets to Icon View	<p>● → <b>Widget</b> → ● → <b>Widget Contents</b> → ● → <b>Select widget</b> → ☰ → <b>Add to Icon View</b> → ● → <b>Select page</b> → ● → <b>Specify target location</b> → ●</p>
Slowing pointer speed	<p>● → <b>Widget</b> → ● → <b>Widget Contents</b> → ● → <b>Select widget</b> → ● → ☰ → <b>Cursor Speed</b> → ● → <b>Slow</b> → ● → <b>OK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May be unavailable for some widgets.</li> </ul>
Widget History	<p><b>Start Here</b> → ● → <b>Widget</b> → ● → <b>Widget History</b> → ● → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Showing All Text</b> Select record → ☰ → <b>View full text</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting a Record</b> Select record → ☰ → <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting All Records</b> Select record → ☰ → <b>Delete All</b> → ● → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</p>
Opening widget notification history	



## Settings

Changing automatic update interval	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Auto Refresh</i> → ● → <i>Select interval</i> → ●
Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>AutoConnect Abroad</i> → ● → <i>On</i> → ●
Hiding confirmation outside Japan	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set Use Abroad</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●
Disabling widget notifications	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Notification Setting</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●
Disabling cookies	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Cookies</i> → ● → <i>Disabled</i> → ●
Deleting cookies	● → <i>Widget</i> → ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Delete Cookies</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●

## S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)

Adding news items	⌚ → Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget → ☰ → <i>Operation</i> → ● → <i>Content Menu</i> → ● → <i>Add News</i> → ● → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → ● → <i>登録はこちら</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Select genre</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	⌚ → Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget → ☰ → <i>Operation</i> → ● → <i>Content Menu</i> → ● → <i>News Display</i> → ● → <i>News Speed</i> → ● → <i>Select speed</i> → ●

Showing unread news only	⌚ → Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget → ☰ → <i>Operation</i> → ● → <i>Content Menu</i> → ● → <i>News Display</i> → ● → <i>Target News</i> → ● → <i>Unread Only</i> → ●
S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)	
Assigning members	⌚ → Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget → ☰ → <i>Operation</i> → ● → <i>Content Menu</i> → ● → <i>Assign Member</i> → ● → <i>Select category</i> → ● → <i>Select entry/member</i> → ● → <i>(Empty)</i> → ●
Managing members	<b>Start Here</b> ⌚ → Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget → ● → <i>Select member</i> → ☰ → <i>Operation</i> → ● → <i>Content Menu</i> → ● → See below <b>Deleting Members</b> <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● <b>Changing Member Order</b> <i>Move</i> → ● → ☰ (Up) or ⌵ (Down) → ● <b>Changing Member Icons</b> <i>Change Icon</i> → ● → <i>Select Pictogram</i> → ●



## S! Applications

### ? Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low.

### ? S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

- Regardless of setting, a notice appears for Screensaver S! Applications.

### ? Keitai Wi-Fi connection failure confirmation appears upon starting S! Application

- Handset may be outside Wi-Fi range. Move into range or cancel **Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G** in Switch Notification.



<b>Calendar &amp; Tasks</b> .....	<b>11-2</b>
Calendar .....	11-2
Tasks .....	11-6
<b>Alarms</b> .....	<b>11-8</b>
Using Alarms .....	11-8
<b>Wakeup TV</b> .....	<b>11-10</b>
Using Wakeup TV .....	11-10
<b>Relaxation Time</b> .....	<b>11-12</b>
Playing Animation with Music & Illumination .....	11-12
<b>Household Accounts</b> .....	<b>11-13</b>
Managing Household Expenses ..	11-13
<b>Calculator</b> .....	<b>11-17</b>
Using Calculator .....	11-17
<b>Expenses Memo</b> .....	<b>11-18</b>
Adding Expenses .....	11-18
<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> .....	<b>11-19</b>
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese) .....	11-19
Locking IC Card .....	11-20
<b>Simulated Call</b> .....	<b>11-23</b>
Faking Incoming Calls .....	11-23
<b>Stopwatch</b> .....	<b>11-24</b>
Using Stopwatch .....	11-24
<b>Countdown Timer</b> .....	<b>11-25</b>
Using Countdown Timer .....	11-25
<b>World Clock</b> .....	<b>11-26</b>
Opening World Clock .....	11-26

<b>Hour Minder</b> .....	<b>11-27</b>
Using Hour Minder .....	11-27
<b>Pedometer</b> .....	<b>11-28</b>
Using Pedometer .....	11-28
<b>Compass</b> .....	<b>11-30</b>
Using Compass .....	11-30
<b>S! GPS Navi</b> .....	<b>11-31</b>
Using S! GPS Navi .....	11-31
<b>Document Viewer</b> .....	<b>11-34</b>
Opening PC Documents .....	11-34
<b>Notepad</b> .....	<b>11-35</b>
Saving Text .....	11-35
<b>ASCII Art</b> .....	<b>11-36</b>
Using ASCII Art .....	11-36
<b>Voice Recorder</b> .....	<b>11-37</b>
Recording/Playing Voice .....	11-37
<b>Scan Barcode</b> .....	<b>11-38</b>
Scanning Barcodes .....	11-38
<b>Create QR Code</b> .....	<b>11-39</b>
Creating QR Codes .....	11-39
<b>Scan Card</b> .....	<b>11-40</b>
Scanning Business Cards .....	11-40
<b>Scan Text</b> .....	<b>11-41</b>
Scanning Text .....	11-41
<b>Kanji Grabber</b> .....	<b>11-42</b>
Using Kanji Grabber .....	11-42
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>11-43</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>11-56</b>

# 11

## Handy Extras

## Calendar

### Opening Calendar

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/**  
Life menu, **Calendar** ➔



Calendar Window

- Press to toggle Calendar view.

### Key Assignments

#### ■ All Views

Open Previous Page	
Open Next Page	
Open Help	

#### ■ 1Month/3Month View

Select Date	
Go to Current Date	

#### ■ 6Month View

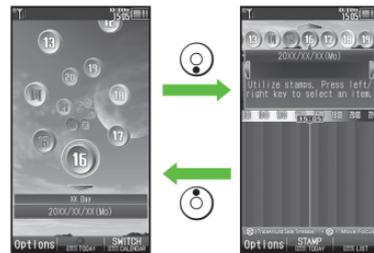
Go to Current Month	
Select Month	

#### ■ Week View

Select Date	
Select Time Block	

### Spinguru Log Calendar (Spinguru Log)

Long Press in Calendar window to switch to Spinguru Log Calendar (Spinguru Log); circle finger around Vector Pad for operation. Select a date and press to save/check schedules, view operation history (mail records, call log, etc.), and more.



Spinguru Log Menu

Timeline Window

#### Opening Help

[Spinguru Log Menu]/[Timeline Window] ➔ **Explain Operation** ➔

- To return, press .
- Returning to Calendar Window**  
[Spinguru Log Menu] (Long)  
**Accessing Operation History, Etc.**  
[Timeline Window] (Long)

### Advanced

- Changing default view ● Jumping to specified date ● Changing date color ● Selecting task view option ● Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)  
● Hiding schedules ● Saving additional holidays ● Hiding/showing holidays (P.11-43)

## Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, Category, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details:  
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1** In Calendar window, select date ➔ ●



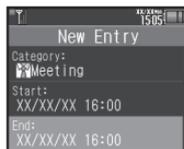
- 2** <Add New Entry> ➔ ●

- 3** Enter subject ➔ ●



- 4** Preset ➔ Select Category ➔ ●

- 5** Enter start date/time ➔ ●



- 6** End: ➔ ● ➔ Enter end date/time ➔ ●

- 7** Alarm: ➔ ●

- 8** Alarm Time: ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ● ➔ Yr

- 9** Description: ➔ ● ➔ Enter schedule details ➔ ●

- 10** Yr ➔ Saved

### Selecting Category from History

In **4**, History ➔ Select Category ➔ ● ➔ From **5**

### Selecting Custom Category

In **4**, Definable ➔ Select Category ➔ ● ➔ From **5**

### All-Day Schedule

In **5**, All Day ➔ ● ➔ From **5**

### Custom Alarm Time

In **5**, Alarm Time: ➔ ● ➔ Other ➔ ● ➔ Enter date/time ➔ ● ➔ Yr ➔ From **5**

## Advanced

- Setting Location ● Creating Categories ● Saving repetitive schedules ● Editing entries ● Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ● Changing Alarm volume ● Selecting Vibration option (And more on P.11-44)

**At Alarm Time**

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

**Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

**When Another Function is Active**

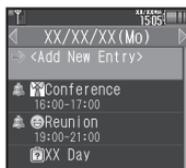
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

**Incoming Calls**

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

**Opening Schedules/Tasks**

- 1** In Calendar window, select date



Schedule List

- 2** Select schedule or task
- 3** Standby returns

**Opening Task List**

In **2**, select task *Go to Tasks*

**Accessing Secret Entries**

[Calendar Window] *Unlock Temporarily* *Enter Handset Code*

**Opening Related Message**

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- 1** In schedule list, select schedule
  - 2** *Related Mail*
- Related message opens.
  - To return to schedule window, press .

**Deleting Message from Schedule**

After **1**, *Related Mail*: *Yes*

**Advanced****1**

- Searching entries
- Checking memory status
- Deleting all entries
- Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)
- Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month View)
- Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (P.11-45)

## Information Link

Set to show or hide the following information in Calendar.

Reservation List	TV Timer and TV Recording Timer entries
Birthday	Birthdays entered in Phone Book
What is today? (Japanese)	Preset anniversaries, commemorative days, etc.

- 1 In Calendar window,
- 2 *Calendar Settings*  $\rightarrow$
- 3 *Data to Show*  $\rightarrow$
- 4 Select item  $\rightarrow$  (/)
- 5

## Spinguru Log Information Link

- In Spinguru Log, operation history of various functions are also displayable.

## Editing TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

- 1 In schedule list, select entry  $\rightarrow$
- 2 *Edit*  $\rightarrow$
- 3 *Edit*  $\rightarrow$

## Deleting Entries

- In , *Delete*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Yes*  $\rightarrow$
- Timer is canceled.

## Making Birthday Calls

- 1 In schedule list, select entry  $\rightarrow$
  - 2 *Call*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  Select phone number  $\rightarrow$
- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

## Sending Birthday Messages

- In , *Mail*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  Select number/address  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  Complete message  $\rightarrow$
- Omit number/address selection step if only one number or address is saved.
  - For phone numbers, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press .

## Deleting Schedules

## One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule  $\rightarrow$
- 2 *Delete*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *This Appointment*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Yes*  $\rightarrow$

## All Entries of the Day

- 1 In Calendar window, select date  $\rightarrow$
- 2 *Delete*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *All This Day*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Yes*  $\rightarrow$

# Tasks

## Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:  
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/  
Life menu, **Tasks** →



- 2 **<Add New Entry>** →

- 3 **Enter subject** →



- 4 **Enter due date/time** →



- 5 **Alarm:** →

- 6 **Alarm Time:** → → **Select time** → →

- 7 **Description:** → → **Enter task details** →

- 8 → **Saved**

### Task with No Due Date/Time

In 4, → → **From** 7

### Custom Alarm Time

In 6, **Alarm Time:** → → **Other** →

→ **Enter date/time** → → →

**From** 7

## Advanced

- 1 ● Hiding tasks ● Editing tasks ● Setting priority ● Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ● Changing Alarm volume ● Selecting Vibration option ● Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.11-45 - 11-46)

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



## Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

## Stopping Alarm to Open Task

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

## When Another Function is Active

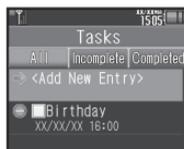
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

## Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

## Opening Tasks

- Tools** **In PIM/ Life menu, Tasks**



Task List

- Use to open Completed or Incomplete task list.

- Select task



- Standby returns**

## Accessing Secret Entries

- After
1, **Unlock Temporarily**  
**Enter Handset Code**

## Marking Tasks as Completed

- After
1, select task

## Deleting Tasks

## One Entry

- In task list, select task
- Delete**
- This Task** **Yes**

## All Completed Tasks

- In task list,
- Delete**
- All Comp. Tasks** **Yes**

## Advanced

- Searching tasks Sorting tasks by priority Checking memory status Deleting all tasks (P.11-46)

## Using Alarms

## Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week: (Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/ Life menu, Alarms** →



Alarm List

- 2 --:-- → → **Enter hour (24-hour format)** → **Enter minutes** →



- 3 **Repeat:** →



- 4 **Selected Days** →

- 5 **Select day** → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** →

- 6 **Snooze:** →

- 7 **Select interval** → • For custom intervals, select *Other*.

- 8 **Alarm Volume:** →

- 9 **Adjust level** →

- 10 **Duration:** →

- 11 **Select time** → • For custom Duration, select *Other*.

- 12 → **Saved** • For more settings, repeat 2 - 12.

- 13 → **Standby returns**

## Activating Alarm Once or Daily

In 4, **Once** or **Every Day (All)** → → **From** 5

## Selecting/Canceling All Days

In 5, → **Check All** or **Uncheck All** →

## Excluding Holidays

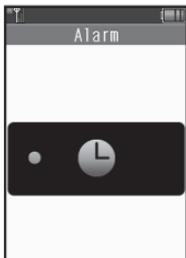
In 5, select day → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** → **Except Holidays** → (  ) → → **From** 5

## Advanced

- 1 • Editing entries • Saving entry name • Changing Alarm tone/video • Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time • Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode • Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P.11-46)

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



### Stopping Alarm

- Press a key.

### When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

### Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

## When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

### Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing,  → Yes →

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

## Canceling Alarm

**1** In Alarm list, select entry  
→

**2** *Switch Off* →   
• Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

### Reactivating Entry

In , *Switch On* →

## Deleting Alarm

### One Entry

**1** In Alarm list, select entry  
→

**2** *Reset Alarm* →

**3** Yes →

### All Entries

**1** In Alarm list, select entry  
→

**2** *Clear All* →

**3** Enter Handset Code →   
→ Yes →

## Using Wakeup TV

### Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

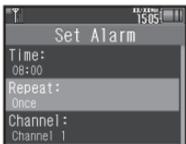
- Complete TV Area Setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

- 1** → **Tools** → → **In PIM/ Life menu, Wakeup TV** →



Wakeup TV List

- 2** --:-- → → **Enter hour (24-hour format)** → **Enter minutes** →



Wakeup TV Menu

- 3** **Repeat:** →
- 4** **Selected Days** →
- 5** **Select day** → ( / ) → **Complete selection** →
- 6** **Channel:** →
- 7** **Select channel** →
- 8** → **Saved**
- For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.
- 9** → **Standby returns**

### Activating TV Once or Daily

- In **4**, **Once or Every Day (All)** → → **From**

### Selecting/Canceling All Days

- In **5**, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

### Excluding Holidays

- In **5**, select day → ( / ) → **Complete selection** → **Except Holidays** → ( ) → → **From**

### Canceling Alarm

- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:  
**[Wakeup TV Menu] Alarm On/Off:** → → **Off** → → **From**

### Adjusting Alarm Volume

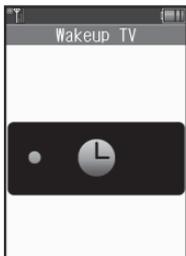
- [Wakeup TV Menu] Alarm Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → **From**

### Advanced

- Editing entries • Changing Alarm tone/video • Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.11-47)

## At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



### Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.

### When Another Function is Active

- TV may not activate depending on the function.

### After TV is On for a Period of Time

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to exit TV.

## Canceling Wakeup TV

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** *Wakeup TV Off* ➔

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

### Reactivating Entry

In , *Wakeup TV On* ➔

## Deleting Wakeup TV

### ■ One Entry

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** *Reset Alarm* ➔

**3** *Yes* ➔

### ■ All Entries

**1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

**2** *Clear All* ➔

**3** *Enter Handset Code* ➔   
➔ *Yes* ➔

## Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded Flash® files with music and illumination.  
Set playback time, volume, etc. as needed.

1 **Tools** **In PIM/  
Life menu, Relaxation Time**

2 **Select type**

- Animation appears.
- For **Flash®**, select a file and press .
- Message appears when Playback Time is set to **Continuous Play** (except when charging battery); press to proceed.

### Setting Relaxation Time

1 **Tools** **In PIM/  
Life menu, Relaxation Time**

2 **Settings**



3 **Playback Time**

4 **Select time**

- For custom playback time, select **Other**.

5 **Volume**

6 **Adjust level**

7 **Set Key Illumi**

8 **Key Pattern**

9 **Select pattern**

10 **Standby returns**

### Disabling Key Illumination

In , **Switch On/Off** **Off**

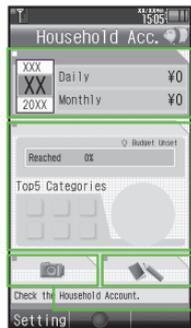
## Managing Household Expenses

Scan receipts with mobile camera to manage expenses on handset.

### Setup

Specify closing day, closing month and budget for the month.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/  
Life menu, Household  
Accounts** →



Totals Panel

Charts Panel

Manual Input Panel

Scan Receipt Panel

Household Accounts Window

- 2



Account Setup Menu

- 3 **Date/Month Closed** →



- Press to change default closing date (end of the month); use to move between date and month fields.

- 4 **Enter date/month** →

- 5 **Yes** →

- 6 **Budget** → → **Enter amount** →

- 7 → **Household Accounts window returns**

Restricting Access to Household Accounts by Handset Code

- [Account Setup Menu] **Locks** →   
→ **On** →

Resetting Household Accounts

- [Account Setup Menu] **Master Reset**  
→ → **Enter Handset Code** →   
→ **Yes** →

## Saving Entries

## Scanning Receipts

Scan receipts with mobile camera to enter date, expense items, fees/prices and total amount automatically.

Scan may fail if receipt is too long, folded, faded, etc.; some formats are not supported.

**1** In Household Accounts window, select scan receipt panel → 

**2** Frame receipt on Display



Scan Window

- Frame date, expense items and total amount. Align text parallel to guide lines.

**3** 

- To cancel, press .

**4** 

➔ Scan results appear



- To add, delete or edit expense items, see P.11-15 "Entering Manually."

**5** 

- Entry is saved.

## Opening Help

[Scan Window] 

- Press  to return to scan window.

## Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

## Entering Manually

- 1** In Household Accounts window, select manual input panel → ●



Expense Input Window

- 2** Select date panel → ● → Enter date → ●
- 3** Shop → ● → Select shop/facility → ●
- 4** Paid → ● → Select payment method → ●

- 5** New Item → ●



- 6** Item → ● → Enter name → ●

- 7** Category → ● → Select Category → ●

- 8** Value → ● → Enter amount → ● → ¥

- 9** ¥ → Saved

## Adding Expense Items

After ③, select item field → ● →

Add Items → ● → From ⑤

## Deleting Expense Items

After ③, select item → ● → Delete

→ ● → Yes → ● → ⑤

## Changing Categories of All Items at Once

[Expense Input Window] Category

→ ● → Select Category → ● → ⑤

## Advanced

- ☞ ● Renaming icon labels ● Exporting Household Accounts data (P.11-47)

## Opening Expense Records

## Opening Entries

1 In Household Accounts window, select totals panel



2 Select date →

20XX/XX/XX	
Monthly Expense	¥158,400
Daily Expense	¥1,050
スーパー1	¥1,050

Daily Expense Log

3 Select entry →

- Details appear.

## Deleting an Entry

[Daily Expense Log] Select entry →

→ Delete Receipt → → Yes →

## Deleting All Entries

[Daily Expense Log] → Delete Day Receipt Data or Delete Month Receipt Data → → Yes →

## Viewing Expense Trends

Follow these steps to view monthly expenses, budgets and balances:

1 In Household Accounts window, select charts panel



2 Results by Month →

20XX		
Expenses	¥1,084,080	
Balance	¥355,920	
Balance	Expenses	
Jan	¥36,110	¥200,890
Feb	¥80,000	¥180,000
Mar	¥63,000	¥170,000
Apr	¥40,300	¥198,700

- Press to toggle budget and balance.
- Use to open previous or next year.

## Viewing Other Expense Trends

In 2, select item →

## Using Calculator

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/ Life menu, Calculator** ➔



Calculator Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to enter digits**  
➔ **Calculate**
- 3 ➔ **Standby returns**

### Key Assignments

<b>+</b> (Add)	
<b>-</b> (Subtract)	
<b>×</b> (Multiply)	
<b>÷</b> (Divide)	
<b>=</b> (Sum)	
<b>C-CE</b> (Clear)	
<b>CM</b> (Clear Memory)	
<b>RM</b> (Recall Memory)	
<b>M+</b> (Add to Memory)	
<b>.</b> (Decimal)	
<b>+/-</b> (Positive/Negative Value)	
<b>%</b> (Percentage)	

### Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset is powered off.

### Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

### Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

- Enter 800,000 ➔ x ➔ 30 ➔ %**  
■ **240,000** appears.

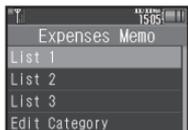
### Advanced

- Copying calculation results Changing exchange rate for currency conversion Converting currencies (P.11-47)

## Adding Expenses

### Entering Expenses

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/  
Life menu, *Expenses Memo*  
→



Expenses Memo Menu

- 2 Select list →
- 3 Add New Expense →
- 4 Enter amount →



- 5 Select Category → →  
Saved

#### Saving under Custom Category

In , *Other* → → Enter name →

### Checking Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo menu,  
select list →
- 2 **Totals** →



Expenses Memo List

- 3 → Standby returns

#### Saving Entries to Notepad

[Expenses Memo List] → *Save to Notepad* →

### Deleting Entries

#### ■ One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,  
select entry →
- 2 **Delete Item** →
- 3 **Yes** →

#### ■ All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,
  - 2 **Delete All** →
  - 3 **Enter Handset Code** →   
→ **Yes** →
- All entries on the list are deleted.

### Advanced

● Changing Category of saved entry ● Changing amount ● Renaming Categories (P.11-47)

## Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 943SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

### Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

#### Starting Lifestyle-Appli

- ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➔ ● ➔ *Lifestyle-Appli*
- ➔ ● ➔ *Select application* ➔ ●

#### Important Lifestyle-Appli Usage Notes

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

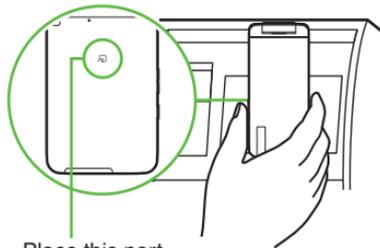
### Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
- Transactions are possible even while handset power is off (if battery is adequately charged).
- Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

- 1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➔ Confirm scan results



Place this part  
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

### Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

#### When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

### Advanced

- 👉 ● Enabling to view e-money balances ● Moving applications up/down Balance Info list ● Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.11-48)

## Locking IC Card

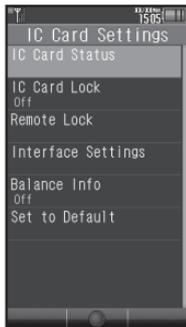
### IC Card Lock

Restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/  
Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai** →



- 2 **IC Card Settings** →



IC Card Settings Menu

- 3 **IC Card Lock** → → **On**  
→

- 4 **Enter Handset Code** →   
→ **Yes** →

### Canceling IC Card Lock

- In , **IC Card Lock** → → **Off** →   
→ **Enter Handset Code** →

### Advanced

- Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands Opening IC Card properties Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (P.11-48)

## Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

<b>Mail Remote Lock</b>	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
<b>Call Remote Lock</b>	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

### Mail Remote Lock

#### ■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 **Tools** → **In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai**
- 2 **IC Card Settings**
- 3 **Remote Lock** → **Enter Handset Code**

#### 4 **Mail Remote Lock**



Mail Remote Lock Menu

#### 5 **Remote Lock PW**

#### 6 **Enter password**

#### 7 **Switch On/Off**

#### 8 **On**

#### Canceling Mail Remote Lock

- In **Switch On/Off** → **Off**

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**  
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

#### 1 **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**

- After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

## Call Remote Lock

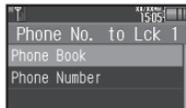
### Preparation on Handset

- 1 **Tools** → **In PIM/Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai**
- 2 **IC Card Settings**
- 3 **Remote Lock** → **Enter Handset Code**
- 4 **Call Remote Lock**



Call Remote Lock Menu

- 5 **Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2**



- 6 **Phone Book** → **Select entry** → **Select phone number**
  - Select *Phone Number* to enter directly.

- 7 **Switch On/Off**

- 8 **On**

### Enabling Activation via Public Phone

In **Set Public Phone** → **On** → **From**

### Canceling Call Remote Lock

In **Switch On/Off** → **Off**

**Activating Remote Lock via Phone**  
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

- 1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

- 2 **Handset receives call** → **End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

- 3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**

- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

### If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

## Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see P.11-49.

### Setting Simulated Call

- 1 **Tools** → **In PIM/Life menu, Simulated Call**



Simulated Call Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → **On**

- 3 **Set Caller**
- 4 **Name:** → **Enter name**
- 5 **Phone Number:** → **Enter phone number**
- 6 **Assign Tone** → **Select tone/file**
- 7 **PIM/Life menu returns**

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

**Canceling Simulated Call**

[Simulated Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**  
→ **Off**

**Setting Wait Time**

[Simulated Call Menu] **Receive Timing**  
→ **Select time**

### Using Simulated Call

- 1 **(Long)**
  - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
  - Ringtone stops after a period of time.
- 2 **In incoming Voice Call window, press**
  - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)
- 3 **Standby returns**

When Receive Timing is Not *Immediately*

- Press **Cancel** or **Back** during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

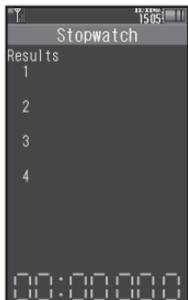
### Advanced

- Starting via Simulated Call menu • Clearing caller information • Overriding Silent volume setting (P.11-48 - 11-49)

## Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops if battery runs low.

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Clock/Gauge** → **Stopwatch** →



Stopwatch Window

- 2 → **Stopwatch starts**
- 3 → **Stopwatch stops**
  - Press to resume.
- 4 → **Yes** → → **Stopwatch ends**
  - Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

### Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running,

### Saving Records to Notepad

After , → **Save to Notepad** →

### Resetting Records

After , → **From**

### Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

## Using Countdown Timer

- 1**
- 2** **Enter minutes** **Enter seconds**



Timer Entry Window

- 2** **Enter minutes** **Enter seconds**

**3**



Countdown Timer Window

- Press to change time.

- 4** **Countdown starts**
- Press to stop/resume countdown.

- 5** **Set time elapses** **Tone sounds**

- 6** **Yes**
- Countdown Timer ends**

### Using Timer Records

- After **1**, **Select record**
- From** **4**

### Resetting Countdown Timer

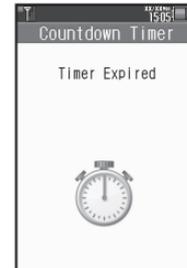
- Stop countdown and**

### Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

### When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



### Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press . (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

### When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

## Opening World Clock

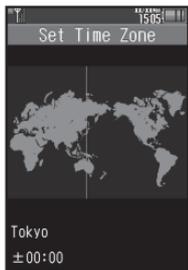
- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Clock/Gauge** → **World Clock** →



Local Time Zone

World Time Zone

- 2



Set Time Zone Window

- 3 → **Select area** →

- 4 → **Standby returns**

### Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)

[Set Time Zone Window]

- To cancel, press .

### Adding Custom Time Zone

[Set Time Zone Window] → Enter

city name → → + or - → →

Enter time difference →

## Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1 → **Settings** → → → In **Sound/Display** menu, **Display** →
- 2 **Standby Display** →
- 3 **Clock/Calendar** →
- 4 **World Clock (L), etc.** →
- 5 → **Standby returns**

## Using Hour Minder

### Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** →



Hour Minder Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Select Time** →



- 4 **Select hour** → (  /  ) → **Complete selection** →

- 5 → **Saved**

- 6 → **Standby returns**

#### Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → → **From**

#### Changing Hour Minder Duration

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Duration:** → → → → **From**

- For custom Duration, select **Other**.

#### Selecting/Canceling All Hours

- In 4, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

### At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



#### Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press a key.

#### When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.

#### Incoming Calls

- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

### Canceling Hour Minder

- 1 In Hour Minder menu, **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →

### Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video ● Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time ● Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode ● Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.11-49)

# Using Pedometer

## Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
  - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
  - While handset is off
  - For the first few steps
  - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

## Adjusting Counter Sensitivity

- **Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → **Settings** → **Step Sensitivity** → **Select option**
  - Select **Low** when steps seem overcounted; select **High** when they seem undercounted.

## Saving Body Information

- Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer**



Pedometer Window

- If Pedometer is inactive, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press **OK**.
- Settings** → **Body Info.**
  - Enter Handset Code**



Body Info Menu

- Height** → **Enter height**
- Weight** → **Enter weight**
- Pace** → **Yes or No**
  - Choose **Yes** to enter pace automatically based on height.
- Enter pace**

## Editing Body Information

- [Body Info Menu] **Select item** → **Enter value**
  - For **Pace**, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

## Activating Pedometer

- In Pedometer window, **Pedometer On**

## Canceling Pedometer

- [Pedometer Window] **Pedometer Off**

## Viewing Step Count Records

## 1 In Pedometer window,



Steps Window

- Press to toggle Daily/Hourly view.
- Press or to scroll down or up by one page.

## 2 Select time/date

- Hourly/daily step counts appear.

## 3 → Pedometer window returns

## Pedometer Window Tabs

- Press to open Exercise and then Calories.

## Resetting Today's Step Count

[Pedometer Window] → *Reset Day's Data* → *Yes*

## Resetting Log

[Steps Window] → *Walk Data Reset* → Enter Handset Code → *Yes*

- Today's data is also reset.

## Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

Steps	Walking Time
Exercise	Calories
Distance	Fat burned

1 In Pedometer window, → *Settings* → *Target* 2 *Target Settings*

## 3 Select item → Enter value/time

- Other target settings may consequently change.

## Editing Targets

[Pedometer Window] → *Settings* → *Target* → *Target Settings* → Select item → Enter value/time

## When Target is Achieved

- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Select **Goal Achievement** and press to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:

[Pedometer Window] → *Settings* → *Target* → *Goal Announce* → *Off*

## About Exercise (Ex)

- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).

## Advanced

- Using Pedometer Calendar Checking accumulated data Resetting accumulated data Setting daily step count reset time Customizing achievement notice (P.11-49 - 11-50)

## Using Compass

### Opening Compass

- 1 → *Tools* → → → *Clock/Gauge* → *Compass*



Compass Window

- Compass opens; use as a rough guide.

### Adjusting Compass

- 1 In Compass window, → →
- Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Compass Indicator

- When map is open, compass indicator appears; follow these steps to hide it:
  - *Tools* → → → *Clock/Gauge*
  - *S! GPS Navi* → → *NAVI*
  - Settings* → → *Compass Indicator*
  - → *Off* →

## Using S! GPS Navi

Use this GPS navigation service to pinpoint current location, find routes to destinations, and more.

Provide current location to administrator upon request.

### Precautions

- Location Information accuracy may be affected when GPS satellite/radio station signal reception is poor. Use S! GPS Navi under the open sky.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from the provided Location Information.

### Positioning

- Pinpoints current location using signals transmitted from GPS satellites.

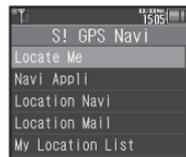
### Location Information Accuracy

- Probable distance from the actual position is classified into three accuracy levels, from level 1 (low) to 3 (high), indicated by the number of s.
- A confirmation appears when accuracy level is 1 or 2; follow these steps:

**Yes or No** ➔ 

### Starting Navi-Appli

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔   
**Clock/Gauge** ➔ **S! GPS Navi**  
➔ 



S! GPS Navi Menu

- 2 **Navi Appli** ➔ 
  - To disable confirmation, press  before .

- 3 **Yes** ➔ 

### Opening Navi Appli List

[S! GPS Navi Menu] **Navi Appli List**  
➔ 

- To activate Navi Appli, select one and press .

### Selecting a Navi-Appli for S! GPS Navi

[S! GPS Navi Menu] **NAVI Settings** ➔

 ➔ **Select Navi Appli** ➔  ➔

**Select application** ➔ 

## Opening Location Log

- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **Location Logs** → ●
- 2 Select record → ●
  - Details appear.
- 3  → List returns

## Pinpointing Current Location

- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **Locate Me** → ●



- To disable confirmation, press  before 2.

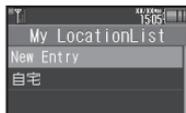
- 2 **Yes** → ● → Positioning starts
  - Map of your current location appears.

## Using My Location

## Saving Location Information

Follow these steps to save current location as a new entry:

- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **My Location List** → ●



My LocationList Menu

- 2 **New Entry** → ●
- 3 **Name** → ● → Enter name → ●
- 4 **Location Info** → ●
- 5 **From Current Loc.** → ● → Positioning complete
- 6 ●
  - When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose **No** and press ● to proceed to 7.
- 7 

## Saving as Home

- In 2, **自宅** → ● → From 4  
 Saving from Location Log  
 In 5, **From Location Logs** → ● →  
 Select record → ● → 

## Opening Entries

- 1 In My LocationList menu, select entry → ●
- 2 **Location Info** → ●
  - Details window appears.
- 3  → Details window closes

## Deleting Entries

- 1 In My LocationList menu, select entry
- 2  → **Delete** → ● → **Yes** → ●

## Advanced

-  ● Sending current location via mail ● Changing map source URL ● Disabling positioning ● Selecting Location Information transmission option ● Using My Location & Location Log ● Saving Location Log records to My Location ● Deleting Location Log records (P.11-50)

## Using Ichi Navi (Japanese)

Locate other S! GPS Navi-compatible handset users or lost handset.

- Ichi Navi requires a separate contract and initial settings.
- If Double Number is active, service uses Line A regardless of usage mode setting.
- For more about Ichi Navi, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-23).

### 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, *Location Navi* ➔

- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

## Providing Location Information

Provide current location to administrator upon request.

- Location may be provided automatically upon administrator's request without confirmation.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).

### 1 Location Information request arrives



- A confirmation appears. (Message shown above is for reference only.)

### 2 (provide) or (reject)

## Information

Information window opens after your location is provided manually (by pressing ) upon Location Information request or automatically upon administrator's request. Select the item and press  to open log.

## Advanced

-   Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically (P.11-51)

## Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)

Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)

Microsoft® Word (.doc)

Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Downloaded files are also supported.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.17-24).

**1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Document Viewer** ➔

**2** Select file ➔

**Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)**  
 In open file, (Long) ➔ Specify portion ➔ ➔ **Zoom Out or Zoom In** ➔

### Key Assignments

View Whole Page	
Scroll	
View Upper Left	
Toggle Full Screen View On/Off	
View Upper Right	
Zoom Out	
Continuous Zoom Out	(Long) (Long)
View Center	
Zoom In	
Continuous Zoom In	(Long) (Long)
View Lower Left	
Jump to Page	
View Lower Right	
Open Help	
Next Page	
Previous Page	
Fit Width	
Rotate 90 Degrees	

## Saving Text

### New Notepad Entry

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Notepad** →



Notepad List

- 2 <Add New Entry> →
- 3 Enter text →
- 4 Select Category → → Saved

### Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List]

- Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

### Changing Landscape Notepad List View

- [Notepad List] Select entry → → **Setting/Manage** → → **Landscape Display** → → Select option →

### Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

- [Text Entry Window] → **Notepad** → → **Call Notepad** → → Select entry →

### Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →
  - Text appears.
- 2 → **List returns**

### Deleting Entries

#### One Entry

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →
- 2 **Delete Item** → → **Yes** →

#### Selected Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry → → **Setting/Manage** →
- 2 **Multiple Selection** → → Select entry → (/ ) → Complete selection →
- 3 **Delete** → → **Yes** →

#### Unchecking All

In , **Uncheck All** →

#### All Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry → → **Setting/Manage** →
- 2 **Delete All** → → Enter Handset Code → → **Yes** →

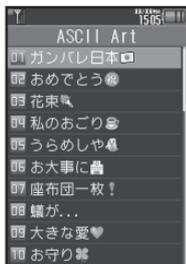
### Advanced

- Editing Notepad
- Searching text within all entries
- Inserting Notepad text into message text
- Sending entries via S! Mail
- Creating text files
- Importing text files
- Checking memory status
- Opening properties (P.11-51)

# Using ASCII Art

## Inserting ASCII Art

- 1 In message text entry window, → *Call ASCII Art* →
- 2 Select entry →



### Previewing ASCII Art

- In 2, select entry →
- Press to insert ASCII Art.

## Editing Entries

- 1 → *Tools* → → → *Doc./Rec.* → *ASCII Art* →



ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry → → *Edit* →

### Opening Entries

In 2, select entry → → *View* →

### Adding New Entries

In 2, *<Empty>* → → *Create ASCII Art* →

## Deleting Entries

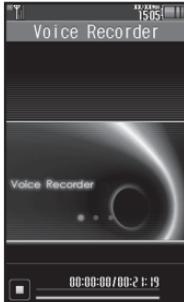
- 1 In ASCII Art list, select entry → → *Delete* →
- 2 *Yes* →

## Recording/Playing Voice

### Recording

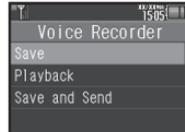
- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Voice Recorder** →



Recording Window

- 2 → **Recording starts**
- 3 → **Recording ends**



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

- 4 **Save** →

#### Play Before Saving

In 4, **Playback** → → **Playback starts** → → **Playback stops**

#### Starting Over

In 4, → **From** 2

### Playback

- 1 In recording window, → **Ring Songs-Tones** →
- 2 **Select file** →

#### Playing Files via Data Folder

→ **Data Folder** → → **Ring Songs-Tones** → →

#### Playback Operations

Volume Control	
Pause/Resume	
Stop	

### Advanced

- Saving longer recordings
- Sending Voice files via S! Mail
- Switching storage media (P.11-51)



## Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs/Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

### Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

- 1  → **Tools** →  →   
**Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan**  
→ 
- 2 **Create QR Code** → 
- 3 **Data Folder** → 
- 4 **Select folder** →  → **Select file or entry** → 
  - QR Code is created.
- 5 
  - QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

### From Phone Book Entries

In , **Phone Book** →  → **Select entry** →  → 

### From My Details

In , **My Details** →  →  → 

### From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** →  → **Enter text** →  → 

### Switching Storage Media

In ,  → **Save to** →  → **Phone or Memory Card** →  → 

### Attaching to S! Mail

In ,  → **Send As Message** →  → **Complete message** → 

### Incoming Calls

- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

## Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

**1** ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ●  
**Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan**  
 ➔ ●

**2** **Scan Card** ➔ ●

**3** **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

**4** ● ➔ ●  
 • To cancel, press **Y**.

**5** ● ➔ **Scan results appear**



**6** ● ➔ **Y**  
 • New Phone Book entry is saved.

### If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:

**Yes** ➔ ●

### Switching Storage Media

After **S**, **Y** ➔ **Save to** ➔ ● ➔ ●

**Select storage media** ➔ ● ➔ ●

### Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture

After **S**, **Y** ➔ **Add Image** ➔ ● ➔ ●

**On** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **S**

### Starting Over

After **S**, **Y** ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **From** **S**

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	[3]
Switch to Photo Camera	[7]
Focus Lock	[F]
Mobile Light On/Off	[H]
Adjust Brightness	[←]
Open Help	[0]

### Advanced

- Saving to Notepad
- Pasting to message text
- Copying text (P.11-54)

## Scanning Text

Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.  
Available Modes:

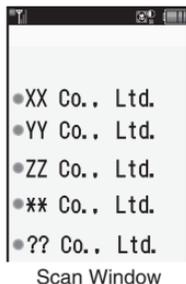
<b>Full</b>	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
<b>Line</b>	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line

- To toggle mode, press  in scan window.
- Some text may not be scanned.

**1**   $\rightarrow$  **Tools**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$    
**Doc./Rec.**  $\rightarrow$  **Barcode/Scan**  
 $\rightarrow$  

**2** **Scan Text**  $\rightarrow$    
• To change mode, press  in scan window.

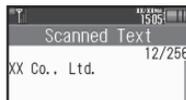
**3** **Frame text in center of Display**



**4**   $\rightarrow$  **Scan starts**  
• To cancel, press .

**5** **Select line**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **Scan results appear**

**6** 



**7**   $\rightarrow$  **Notepad**  $\rightarrow$  

### Correcting Text Type

After ,   $\rightarrow$  **Change Mode**  $\rightarrow$    
 $\rightarrow$  **Select type**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **From** 

### Editing Scanned Text

After ,   $\rightarrow$  **Select/Edit**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$   
**Select character**  $\rightarrow$  **Select alternative**  
from list or edit directly  $\rightarrow$  **From** 

### Starting Over

In ,   $\rightarrow$  **Yes**  $\rightarrow$    $\rightarrow$  **From** 

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

### Advanced

-   Scanning and pasting during text entry
-  Scanning more text
-  Saving scan results
-  Saving linked info to Phone Book
-  Opening saved scan results
-  Using linked info
-  Pasting to message text
-  Copying text (P.11-54 - 11-55)

## Using Kanji Grabber

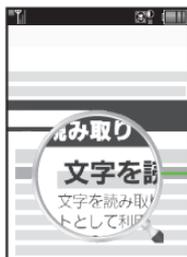
Scan a word of up to ten kanji and look it up in dictionaries.

Some kanji may not be scanned.

1 ● → **Tools** → ● → ●  
**Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan**  
 → ●

2 **Kanji Grabber** → ●

3 **Frame kanji in Loupe**



Loupe

Scan Window

4 ●  
 ● Scan results (kanji) appear.

5 ●  
 6 **Select dictionary** → ● →  
**Search** → ●

7 **Select word, etc.** → ●  
 ● Definition/translation window opens.

### Starting Over

In Ⓢ, Ⓜ → From Ⓢ

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	Ⓢ
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	Ⓜ
Mobile Light On/Off	Ⓜ
Adjust Brightness	Ⓜ
Open Help	0

### Advanced

● Scanning and pasting during text entry (P.11-55)

Calendar		
<b>View Settings</b>		
Changing default view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Calendar Settings → Default View → Select type</li> </ul>	
Jumping to specified date	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → [8] → Enter date</li> </ul>	
Changing date color	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>By Days of the Week</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Calendar Settings → Set Color → By Week → Select day → Select color</li> </ul> <p><b>By Date</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select date → [4] → Select color</li> <li>• Not available in 6Month View.</li> </ul> <p><b>Resetting "By Date" Colors</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Calendar Settings → Set Color → Reset Color → Select option → Yes</li> </ul>	
	Selecting task view option	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Calendar Settings → Tasks View → Select option</li> </ul>
	Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Select date → [2] → Select stamp</li> </ul>
	Hiding schedules	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → Secret: → On</li> </ul>

Saving additional holidays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Calendar Settings → Set Holiday → Private → See below</li> </ul> <p><b>Adding Holidays</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&lt;Empty&gt; → Enter name → Enter date → Select frequency</li> </ul> <p><b>Editing Added Holidays</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select holiday → Edit → Name: → Enter name → Date: → Enter date → Select frequency</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → Calendar Settings → Set Holiday → Private or Public → Select holiday → <input type="checkbox"/>/ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></li> </ul>

## ■ Saving/Editing Schedules

Setting Location	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → <i>Location:</i> → ● → Enter location → ● → ⌵</p>
Creating Categories	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set Category</i> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Renaming Categories</b> Select Category → ● → <i>Edit Category Name</i> → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p><b>Changing Icons</b> Select Category → ● → <i>Change Icon</i> → ● → Select Pictogram → ●</p> <p><b>Resetting</b> ☰ → <i>Reset Settings</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → <i>Repeat:</i> → ● → Select frequency → ● → Enter repeat time → ● → ⌵</p> <p>• Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → <i>S! Friend's Status:</i> → ● → <i>Link Setting:</i> → ● → <i>Linked</i> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Availability</b> <i>Answer Status:</i> → ● → Edit → ⌵ → ⌵ → ⌵</p> <p>• Set Category first.</p> <p><b>Comment</b> <i>Comment:</i> → ● → Enter text → ● → ⌵ → ⌵</p> <p>• Set Category first.</p>

Editing entries	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → Select item → ● → Edit in the same manner as saving schedules → ⌵</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → <i>Alarm:</i> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>Alarm Tone/Video</b> <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> → ● → Select folder → ● → Select tone/file → ● → ⌵ → ⌵</p> <p>• Select start point if required.</p> <p><b>Duration</b> <i>Duration:</i> → ● → Select time → ● → ⌵ → ⌵</p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → ● → <i>Alarm Volume:</i> → ● → Adjust level → ●</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → ● → <i>Vibration:</i> → ● → Select option → ●</p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → ● → <i>For Manner Mode:</i> → ● → <i>Ring</i> → ● → Yes → ●</p>

## Managing Schedules

Searching entries	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calendar</b> → See below</p> <p><b>By Part of Subject</b>          [6] → Enter text →</p>
	<p><b>By Category</b>          [9] → Select Category →</p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calendar</b> → Select date → <b>Memory Status</b> →</p>
Deleting all entries	<p>→ <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calendar</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>All Appointments</b> → Enter Handset Code → <b>Yes</b> →</p>
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calendar</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Within One Week</b>          Select date → <b>Delete</b> → <b>All This Week</b> → <b>Yes</b> →</p>
	<p><b>Up to the End of Previous Week</b>          Select date → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Up to Last Week</b> → <b>Yes</b> →</p>
Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month View)	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calendar</b> → See below</p> <p><b>Within One Month</b>          Select date → <b>Delete</b> → <b>All This Month</b> → <b>Yes</b> →</p>
	<p><b>Up to the End of Previous Month</b>          Select date → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Up to Last Month</b> → <b>Yes</b> →</p>

Deleting entries in six months (6Month View)

→ **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Calendar** → **Delete** → **All This 6Months** → **Yes** →

## Tasks

### Task List

Hiding tasks  
 → **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Tasks** → Select task → **Edit** → **Secret:** → **On** →

### Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks  
 → **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Tasks** → Select task → **Edit** → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks →

Setting priority  
 → **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Tasks** → Select task → **Edit** → **Priority:** → Select priority →

**Start Here** → **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Tasks** → Select task → **Edit** → **Alarm:** → See below

Changing Alarm tone/video & duration

**Alarm Tone/Video**  
**Assign Tone/Video:** → Select folder → Select tone/file → **Y** → **Y**  
 • Select start point if required.

**Duration**  
**Duration:** → Select time → **Y** → **Y**

Changing Alarm volume

→ **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Tasks** → **Alarm Settings** → **Alarm Volume:** → Adjust level →

Selecting Vibration option	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> →</li> <li>● → ☰ → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → ● → <i>Vibration:</i></li> <li>→ ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> →</li> <li>● → ☰ → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → ● → <i>For</i></li> <li><i>Manner Mode:</i> → ● → <i>Ring</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>

### Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>[Start Here]</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> → ● → ☰ → <i>Find</i> → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>By Part of Subject</b></li> <li><i>By Subject</i> → ● → Enter text → ●</li> </ul>
Sorting tasks by priority	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>By Due Date</b></li> <li><i>By Due Date</i> → ● → Enter date → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> →</li> <li>● → ☰ → <i>Sort</i> → ● → <i>Priority</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Checking memory status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> →</li> <li>● → ☰ → <i>Memory Status</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting all tasks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Tasks</i> →</li> <li>● → ☰ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>All Tasks</i> → ● →</li> <li>Enter Handset Code → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>

### Alarms

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> →</li> <li>● → Select entry → ● → Select item → ●</li> <li>→ Edit in the same manner as saving entries →</li> <li>☰</li> </ul>
Saving entry name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> →</li> <li>● → Select entry → ● → <i>Subject:</i> → ● →</li> <li>Enter name → ● → ☰</li> </ul>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>[Start Here]</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> → ● → Select entry → ● → <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File</b></li> <li>Select folder → ● → Select tone/file → ● → ☰</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> </ul>
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video</b></li> <li><i>Customized Screen</i> → ● → ☰</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> →</li> <li>● → Select entry → ● → <i>Vibration:</i> → ● →</li> <li><i>On or Link to Sound</i> → ● → ☰</li> <li>• Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.</li> </ul>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> →</li> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>For Manner Mode</i> →</li> <li>● → <i>Ring</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Alarms</i> →</li> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Link to World Clk</i> →</li> <li>● → <i>On</i> → ●</li> </ul>

Wakeup TV	
Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Wakeup TV</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Select item</b> → ● → <b>Edit in the same manner as saving entries</b> → </li> </ul>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Wakeup TV</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Assign Tone/Video:</b> → ● → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File</b>  <b>Select folder</b> → ● → <b>Select tone/file</b> → ● → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select start point if required.</li> </ul> <p><b>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video</b>  <b>Customized Screen</b> → ● → </p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Wakeup TV</b> → ● → <b>For Manner Mode</b> → ● → <b>Ring</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> </ul>

## Household Accounts

Renaming icon labels	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Household Accounts</b> → ● → <b>Select manual input panel</b> → ● → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Shops</b>  <b>Shop</b> → ● → <b>Select icon</b> →  → <b>Enter name</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Payment Methods</b>  <b>Paid</b> → ● → <b>Select icon</b> →  → <b>Enter name</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Categories</b>  <b>Category</b> → ● → <b>Select icon</b> →  → <b>Enter name</b> → ●</p>

Exporting Household Accounts data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Household Accounts</b> → ● →  → <b>Export All</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> <li>● Data is exported as a CSV file and saved to handset Data Folder (Other Documents).</li> <li>● Files are saved to Memory Card, if inserted.</li> </ul>
-----------------------------------	--

## Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears,  → <b>Copy</b> → ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calculator</b> → ● →  → <b>Money Converter</b> → ● → <b>Exchange Rate</b> → ● → <b>Domestic or Foreign</b> → ● → <b>Enter rate</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Converting currencies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Calculator</b> → ● → <b>Enter amount of money</b> →  → <b>Money Converter</b> → ● → <b>To Domestic or To Foreign</b> → ●</li> <li>● Set Exchange Rate first.</li> </ul>

## Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Expenses Memo</b> → ● → <b>Select list</b> → ● → <b>Totals</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> → ● → <b>Select Category</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Changing amount	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Expenses Memo</b> → ● → <b>Select list</b> → ● → <b>Totals</b> → ● → <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Change Amount</b> → ● → <b>Edit</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Renaming Categories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Expenses Memo</b> → ● → <b>Edit Category</b> → ● → <b>Select Category</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ●</li> </ul>

## Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	<p>  → <b>Tools</b> →  → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> →  → <b>IC Card Settings</b> →  → <b>Balance Info</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> →  → <b>Lifestyle-Appli</b> or <b>S! Appli</b> →  → Select application →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications.</li> <li>• Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.</li> </ul>
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	<p>  → <b>Tools</b> →  → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> →  → <b>IC Card Settings</b> →  → <b>Balance Info</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Select application →  → <b>Move</b> →  → Select target location →  </p>
Removing applications from Balance Info list	<p>  → <b>Tools</b> →  → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> →  → <b>IC Card Settings</b> →  → <b>Balance Info</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Select application →  → <b>Delete</b> →  </p>
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	<p>  → <b>Tools</b> →  → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> →  → <b>IC Card Settings</b> →  → <b>Interface Settings</b> →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Select item →  → <b>Off</b> →  </p>
Opening IC Card properties	<p>  → <b>Tools</b> →  → In PIM/Life menu, <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> →  → <b>IC Card Settings</b> →  → <b>IC Card Status</b> →  </p>

## Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient

**[Start Here]** → → **Tools** → → In PIM/Life menu, **Osaifu-Keitai** → → **IC Card Settings** → → **Remote Lock** → → Enter Handset Code → → **Mail Remote Lock** → → **Notice Settings** → → **Send Notice** → → See below

## Changing Recipient

**To Set Recipient** → → **Set Recipient** → → Select method → → Select/enter number/address → → →

• Omit step of pressing when selecting **Phone Book** as setting method.

• After selecting **Set Recipient** and pressing , phone number or mail address appears if a specific recipient has already been set; edit or delete as needed.

## Disabling Notice

**Off** → → →

## Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock

→ **Tools** → → In PIM/Life menu, **Osaifu-Keitai** → → **IC Card Settings** → → **Remote Lock** → → Enter Handset Code → → **Call Remote Lock** → → **Count for Lock** → → Enter Missed Call count → →

## Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings

→ **Tools** → → In PIM/Life menu, **Osaifu-Keitai** → → **IC Card Settings** → → **Set to Default** → → Enter Handset Code → → **Yes** →

## Simulated Call

## Starting via Simulated Call menu

→ **Tools** → → In PIM/Life menu, **Simulated Call** → → **Receive Simulated Call** → → **Yes** →

• Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting.

• Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.

Clearing caller information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Simulated Call</i> → ● → Set Caller → ● → ☎</li> <li>→ Yes → ● → Ⓜ → Ⓜ</li> </ul>
Overriding Silent volume setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Simulated Call</i> → ● → For Silent Mode → ●</li> <li>→ Ring → ● → Yes → ● → Ⓜ</li> </ul>

## Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Hour Minder → ● → Advanced → ● → Assign Tone/Video: → ● → Select folder → ● → Select tone/file → ● → Ⓜ → Ⓜ</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> </ul>
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Hour Minder → ● → Advanced → ● → Vibration: → ● → On or Link to Sound → ● → Ⓜ → Ⓜ</li> <li>• Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.</li> </ul>
Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Hour Minder → ● → Advanced → ● → For Manner Mode: → ● → Ring → ● → Yes → ● → Ⓜ → Ⓜ</li> </ul>
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Hour Minder → ● → Advanced → ● → Link to World Clk: → ● → On → ● → Ⓜ → Ⓜ</li> </ul>

## Pedometer

Using Pedometer Calendar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → ● → Ⓜ → Select date → ●</li> <li>• Degree of achievement appears.</li> <li>• Press [←] or [→] to view previous or next month.</li> </ul>
Checking accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → ● → ☎ → Accumulated Data → ●</li> <li>• Change in body information is reflected in the data.</li> </ul>
Resetting accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → ● → ☎ → Accumulated Data → ● → ☎ → Reset Walk Data → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</li> <li>• Averages are also reset.</li> </ul>
Setting daily step count reset time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → ● → ☎ → Settings → ● → Count Reset Time → ● → Enter time → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

Customizing achievement notice	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Tools → Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → Settings → Target → Goal Announcement → On → See below</p>
	<p><b>Changing Tone</b> Goal Sound → Select pattern</p>
	<p><b>Changing Tone Volume</b> Goal Volume → Adjust level</p>
	<p><b>Selecting Vibration Option</b> Vibration → Select option</p>
	<p><b>Changing Duration</b> Duration → Select time</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For custom Duration, select <b>Other</b> and press .</li> </ul>
<b>S! GPS Navi</b>	
Sending current location via mail	<p>Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Mail → Positioning complete → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose <b>No</b> and press after positioning, then complete message.</li> </ul>
Changing map source URL	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Map URL Settings → See below</p>
	<p><b>Adding URLs</b> &lt;Not set&gt; → Enter URL</p>
	<p><b>Setting Destination URL</b> Select URL</p> <p><b>Viewing/Editing/Deleting URLs</b> Select URL → Display, Edit or Delete</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen prompt.</li> </ul>

Disabling positioning	<p>Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Positioning Lock → On → Enter Handset Code</p>
Selecting Location Information transmission option	<p>Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Send Location Info → Select option</p>
Using My Location & Location Log	<p><b>Start Here</b> → Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → My Location List or Location Logs → Select entry or record → See below</p> <p><b>Opening Map</b> Yes</p> <p><b>Showing Routes via Navi Appli</b> Go to → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Inserting into Message Text</b> As Msg. Text → Complete message</p>
	<p><b>Saving to Phone Book</b> Save to Ph.Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>
Saving Location Log records to My Location	<p>Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Select record → Set as My Location → Name → Enter name</p>
Deleting Location Log records	<p>Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Select record → Delete or Delete All → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit record selection step when deleting all records.</li> </ul>

Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → ● → NAVI Settings → ● → Inform Location → ● → Do not Show → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</li> </ul>
---	--

## Notepad

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → See below</li> </ul>
Editing Notepad	<p><b>Editing Text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Edit Text → ● → Edit → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Category</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change Category → ● → Select Category → ●</li> </ul>
Searching text within all entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Search → ● → Enter text → ●</li> </ul>
Inserting Notepad text into message text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Send → ● → As Message Text → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ⌵</li> <li>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Sending entries via S! Mail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Send → ● → Via Message → ● → Complete message → ⌵</li> </ul>
Creating text files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Setting/Manage → ● → Create Text File → ● → Enter name → ● → Save here → ●</li> </ul>

Importing text files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Setting/Manage → ● → Import Text File → ● → Select file → ●</li> </ul>
Checking memory status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Setting/Manage → ● → Memory Status → ●</li> </ul>
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Notepad → ● → Select entry → ☒ → Details → ●</li> </ul>

## Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → ● → ☒ → Record Time → ● → Extended Voice → ● → Recording starts → ● → Recording ends</li> <li>● Insert Memory Card to record in <i>Extended Voice</i> mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)</li> </ul>
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → ● → Recording starts → ● → Recording ends → Save and Send → ● → Complete message → ⌵</li> <li>● Available in <i>For Message</i> mode.</li> </ul>
Switching storage media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ⌚ Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → ● → ☒ → Save Recording to → ● → Select option → ●</li> <li>● Available in <i>For Message</i> mode.</li> <li>● Set to <i>Ask Each Time</i> to select media after every recording.</li> </ul>

## Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> In a text entry window,  → <b>Scan</b> →  → <b>Scan Code</b> →  → <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> →  → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Pasting All Scan Results</b></p> <p></p> <p><b>Pasting a Part of Scan Results</b></p> <p> → <b>Select first character</b> →  → <b>Highlight text range</b> → </p>
Scanning continuously	<p> → <b>Tools</b> →  → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> →  → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> →  → <b>Scan Barcode</b> →  → <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> →  → <b>On</b> →  → <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> →  → <b>Choose <i>Yes</i> to continue scanning or <i>No</i> and press  to view scan results.</b></p>
Reading saved barcode images	<p> → <b>Tools</b> →  → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> →  → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> →  → <b>Open Barcode</b> →  → <b>Select file</b> → </p>
Saving scan results	<p> → <b>Tools</b> →  → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> →  → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> →  → <b>Scan Barcode</b> →  → <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> →  → <b>Save</b> → </p>
Saving to Notepad	<p> → <b>Tools</b> →  → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> →  → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> →  → <b>Scan Barcode</b> →  → <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> →  → <b>Notepad</b> → </p>

## Saving linked info to Phone Book

→ **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → → **Barcode/Scan** → → **Scan Barcode** → → **Frame barcode in center of Display** → → **Select number or mail address** → → **Save to Ph.Book** → → **As New Entry** → → **Complete other fields** →

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.
- When **MEMORY:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

## Opening saved scan results

→ **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → → **Barcode/Scan** → → **Scanned Results** → → **Select file** →

- Select a file and press to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

## Using linked info

**[Start Here]** → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → → **Barcode/Scan** → → **Scan Barcode** → → **Frame barcode in center of Display** → → **See below**

## Dialing Numbers

**Select phone number** → →

## Sending Messages

**Select mail address** → → **Complete message** →

- When **MAILTO:** appears in scan results along with **SUBJECT:** or **BODY:**, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window.

## Accessing Internet Sites

**Select URL** →

Using images as Wallpaper	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☰ → Set as Wallpaper → ● → Vertical or Horizontal → ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Saving images & melodies	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ☰ → To Data Folder → ●</p>
Opening or playing files	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ●</p>
Using images for System Graphics	<p>● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☰ → As System → ● → Select item → ● → Specify image area → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some images may be usable without specifying image area.</li> </ul>

Pasting to message text	<p>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → ☰ → Send Message → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>All Text</b>          ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Selected Text</b>          ☰ → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Copying text	<p>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Text</b>          ☰ → Copy → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</p> <p><b>Number, Address or URL</b>          Select number, mail address or URL → ☰ → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL → ●</p>

## Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● →  → <i>Notepad</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Pasting to message text	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● →  → <i>Send Message</i> → ● → See below</p> <p><b>All Text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → Complete message → </li> <li>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul> <p><b>Selected Text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → Complete message → </li> <li>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Copying text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● →  → <i>Copy</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</li> </ul>

## Scan Text

Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window,  → <i>Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ●</p>
Scanning more text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● →  → <i>Continue Part</i> or <i>Scan More</i> → ●</li> <li>● Select <i>Continue Part</i> to enter additional text or <i>Scan More</i> to enter text after a line break.</li> </ul>
Saving scan results	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● →  → <i>Save</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Saving linked info to Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → Select number or mail address →  → <i>Save to Ph.Book</i> → ● → <i>As New Entry</i> → ● → Complete other fields → </li> <li>● To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
Opening saved scan results	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● →  <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scanned Results</i> → ● → Select file → ●</li> <li>● Select a file and press  to rename files, open properties or delete files.</li> <li>● Some files may not open.</li> </ul>

Using linked info	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>Scan Text</b></p> <p>Frame text in center of Display → <b>Select line</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Dialing Numbers</b></p> <p>Select phone number → <b>Send Message</b></p>
	<p><b>Sending Messages</b></p> <p>Select mail address → <b>Complete message</b></p>
Pasting to message text	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>Scan Text</b></p> <p>Frame text in center of Display → <b>Select line</b> → <b>Send Message</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>All Text</b></p> <p>→ <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> → <b>Complete message</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Selected Text</b></p> <p>→ <b>Select first character</b> → <b>Highlight text range</b> → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> → <b>Complete message</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>

Copying text	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Tools</b> → <b>Doc./Rec.</b> → <b>Barcode/Scan</b> → <b>Scan Text</b></p> <p>Frame text in center of Display → <b>Select line</b> → <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Text</b></p> <p>→ <b>Copy</b> → <b>Select first character</b> → <b>Highlight text range</b></p>
	<p><b>Number, Address or URL</b></p> <p>Select number, mail address or URL → <b>Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL</b></p>
<b>Kanji Grabber</b>	
Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, → <b>Scan</b> → <b>Kanji Grabber</b> → <b>Frame kanji in Loupe</b> → <b>Scan results appear</b></p>

## Osaifu-Keitai®

### ? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

### ? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

### ? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

## Wakeup TV

### ? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

## Voice Recorder

### ? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

### ? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

### ? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

## Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

### ? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

### ? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

### ? Cannot read split QR Codes in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

### ? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

### ? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

<b>S! Quick News</b> .....	<b>12-2</b>
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese) .....	12-2
<b>S! Information Channel</b> .....	<b>12-3</b>
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese) .....	12-3
<b>Content Downloads</b> .....	<b>12-4</b>
Downloading Content (Japanese) ...	12-4
<b>e-Books</b> .....	<b>12-5</b>
Reading e-Books (Japanese) .....	12-5

<b>S! Friend's Status</b> .....	<b>12-6</b>
Using S! Friend's Status .....	12-6
<b>S! Circle Talk</b> .....	<b>12-9</b>
Using S! Circle Talk .....	12-9
<b>Near Chat</b> .....	<b>12-11</b>
Using Near Chat (Japanese).....	12-11
<b>Blog Tool</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>
Blogging .....	12-12
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>12-14</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>12-18</b>

# 12

## Entertainment



## Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news. Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi).

### Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Quick News** →
- 2 **S! Quick News List** →



S! Quick News List

- 3 **登録はこちら** → → **Yes** →
  - Handset connects to the Internet.
- 4 **Select item** →
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

### Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** →
  - Title list appears.
- 2 **Select title** →
  - Information appears.
  - Press to return to title list, or to open next title.

### Updating Items Manually

- [S! Quick News List] **Select item** →   
 → **更新** → → **一件** or **全件** →

### Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

### Advanced

- Updating S! Quick News List automatically ● Checking update schedule ● Deleting S! Quick News items ● Resetting S! Quick News List ● Changing background image ● Accessing source sites ● Disabling image download (P.12-14)



## S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Packet transmission fees apply.

### Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Information Channel/Weather**



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel**
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

### New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel**



- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
- S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

2 **Standby returns**

#### Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]

**What's New**

#### Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu] **Back**

**Issue** **Select date**

### Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

#### Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]

**Weather Indicator** **Manual**

**Update** **Yes**

### Advanced

- Suppressing Information window for new received info Changing Display Size Changing scroll unit Copying text Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates Suppressing Information window for weather updates (And more on P.12-14 - 12-15)



## Downloading Content (Japanese)

Download media content via Yahoo! Keitai.

### Via S! Contents Store

1  → **Entertainment** →



Entertainment Menu

2 **S! Contents Store** →

- Handset connects to the Internet.  
Follow onscreen instructions.

### Via Free Content Providers

Download free Graphic Mail templates, e-Books, games, etc.

Content downloads are free, however, they require Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees (except when downloading via Wi-Fi).

1 **In Entertainment menu,**  
**Free Contents** →

2 **Select provider** →

- Handset connects to the Internet.  
Follow onscreen instructions.



# Reading e-Books (Japanese)

## Downloading e-Books

1 ● ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ●



Entertainment Menu

2 **S! Contents Store** ➔ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

### Note

- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site ([ケーブメカサイトSH-web](#) in Bookmarks; see P.6-8) for e-Books.

### Downloading Free e-Books

In ●, **Free Contents** ➔ ● ➔ **Tada-Hon** or **Tada-Komi** ➔ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

## e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **e-Book Viewer** ➔ ●

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

## Digital Media Viewer

Read digital magazines and newspapers. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **Digital Media Viewer** ➔ ●

- Digital Media Viewer starts. Refer to the Digital Media Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

## BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **BookSurfing** ➔ ●

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

### Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

## Advanced

- ☞ ● Copying text ● Opening non-943SH e-Books (Library) ● Using Library (P.12-15)



## Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to **Online** first.

### First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.



- 1  → **Entertainment** →   
 → **S! Friend's Status** →



- 2 **Yes** →



- 3 **Yes** →

- 4 **Phone Book** →

- 5 **Select entry** →  → **Select phone number** →

- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

- 6 **Yes** →

- Registration request is sent to the number.

### When Request is Accepted

- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

### Direct Entry

- In 4, **Add New Entry** →  → **Enter phone number** →  → 6

### Advanced

- Adding members
- Deleting members
- Moving members
- Renaming Groups
- Rejecting requests
- Updating manually
- Opening notices
- Sending My Details image (And more on P.12-16 - 12-17)



## Opening Member Status

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Friend's Status** → → → **Select Group**



My Status

Member Status

- 2 **Select member** →

- Member status details appear.

## When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

## Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Friend's Status** → → → **私の状況** →



Connection Status

My Status Window

- 2 **Select Status, e.g., ごきげん** →



Status Template Window

- 3 **Select new Status** →
- 4 **Select Availability, e.g., Answer OK** → → **Select new Availability** →
- 5 **<Add Comment>** → → **Enter text** →
- 6 → **Update starts**

## Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] **Online (or Offline)** → → **Select status** →

## Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] **Select Status** → → **Status Icon or Status Label** → → **Select Pictogram or enter text** → →

Changing Availability Settings at Once In 4, **Answer Status** → → **Select new Answer Status** → → **From**

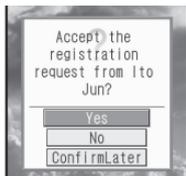
## Editing My Status Name

[My Status Window] → **Edit Name** → → **Edit** →



## Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



### 1 Yes → ●

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

### Rejecting

In 1, No → ● → Yes → ●

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **Confirm Later**, Information window opens.

## Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.



### 1 In Status Template window, New Entry → ●

### 2 Enter name → ●

### 3 <未定> → ●

### 4 Status Icon → ● → Select Pictogram → ●

### 5 Status Label → ● → Enter text → ● → ʔ → ●

### 6 Repeat 3 - 5 → ʔ → Saved

## Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] Select template → Save to DF → Save here → ●

## Loading Templates via Data Folder

[Status Template Window] Add Template → Select template → ●

## Renaming Templates

[Status Template Window] Select template → Edit Temp. Name → Enter name → ●

## Advanced

- Resetting templates (P.12-16)



## Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Packet transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

### Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Circle Talk** →
  - When registering a member for the first time, member registration confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press , then skip ahead to 3.
- 2 <Add New Entry> →



- 3 **Group** → → **Group**  
**Name:** → → **Enter name**  
 →



- 4 Select number, e.g., **No.1:**  
 →

- 5 **Phone Book** →

- 6 Select entry → → **Select**  
**phone number** →



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat 4 - 6 to add members.

- 7 → **Saved**

### Saving as Individuals

- In 3, **Individual** → → 5 - 6  
 Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List  
 In 5, **Members List** → → **Select**  
**member** → → 7  
 ■ Omit 7 when **Individual** is selected in 3.

### Advanced

- Editing individual members ● Editing Groups (P.12-17)



## Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:  
 (First, set Connection status to *Online* (P.12-7).)

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Circle Talk** →



- 2 **Select member or Group** →

- 3 → **Transmission starts**
  - S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
  - Loudspeaker activates automatically.

### Direct Entry

Enter phone number → → **Call**  
**S! Circle Talk** → →

## S! Circle Talk Operations

### Speaking

- 1 **Press and hold** **when**  
**Press and Hold** **appears**  
 → **You have the floor**



- **:My Turn** appears when you have the floor.

- 2 **Keep holding** **to speak**  
 → **Release** → **Floor is released**
  - Warning tone sounds before time limit.

### Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk

- Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.

### Canceling Loudspeaker

**During S! Circle Talk,**

- To reactivate, follow these steps:  
 → **While message appears,**

## Exiting S! Circle Talk

- 1 → **Connection ends**
  - S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

### Rejoining S! Circle Talk

- → **Select most recent S! Circle Talk record** → → **Rejoin Circle Talk** →
- Not available when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

## Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

- 1 **While handset is ringing/vibrating,** → **S! Circle Talk starts**
  - Alternatively, press .
  - S! Circle Talk Operations: left

## Advanced

- Disabling Loudspeaker
- Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.12-17)



## Using Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters. (Available even while handset is out-of-range.) Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

### Access Restriction

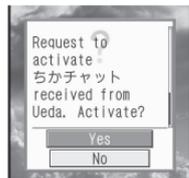
- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear that may be used to reset the application password.

### Sending Near Chat Request

- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **Near chat** ➔
- 2 **Yes** ➔
  - Near Chat S! Application starts.
  - A confirmation appears. Read the message and press (はい) or (いいえ).
  - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

### Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.



After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

- 1 **Yes** ➔
  - Near Chat S! Application starts.
  - A confirmation appears. Read the message and press (はい) or (いいえ).
  - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

### Rejecting Request

In 1, **No** ➔



# Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

## Saving Blog Details

### Setup for Posting via Mail

Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

- 1 **Entertainment** **Blog Tool**



Blog Tool Window

- 2 **Add New Entry**



Blog Setting Menu

- 3 **Blog Title** **Enter name**

- 4 **Blog by send Mail**



- 5 **Blog's Email Address** **Enter mail address**

- 6

### Saving Title/Text for Posts

After **Blog's Title** or **Blog's Text**

**Enter title or text**

- Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

### Setting Image Size for Posting

After **Picture Size**

**Select size**

### Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC sites, or both.

- 1 In Blog Setting menu, **Blog Title** **Enter name**

- 2 **Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai** or **Refer/Send by PC Site/Direct Browser**



- 3 **Blog's URL** **Enter URL**

- 4 **Refer Blog's URL** **Enter URL**

- 5



## Advanced

- Editing entries
- Deleting entries (P.12-17)

## Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/  
Internet beforehand.

### Posting via Mail

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 
- 2 **Blog by send Mail** ➔ 
  - S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
  - Omit  if no URL is saved for posting.
- 3 Complete message ➔ 

### Posting via the Internet

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 
- 2 **Blog by send Browser** ➔ 
  - Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
  - Omit  if no address is saved for posting.
  - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved

After , select browser ➔ 

### Opening Blog Page

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 
  - Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
  - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved

After 1, select browser ➔ 



## S! Quick News

### Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News List automatically	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → Settings → ● → Automatic Update → ● → Select item → ● → Select interval or choose On → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a confirmation appears after completing the steps above, press ●.</li> <li>• When selecting an item set to <b>Off</b>, a confirmation appears.</li> <li>• When Special is set to <b>On</b>, items are updated every four hours.</li> <li>• When General is set to <b>On</b>, items are updated once a day.</li> <li>• Updating items may incur high packet transmission fees.</li> <li>• Only available in Japan.</li> </ul>
Checking update schedule	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → Settings → ● → Check Schedule → ●</p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → S! Quick News List → ● → Select item → ☺ → See below</p> <p><b>One Entry</b> 一件 → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p><b>All Entries</b> 全件 → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Resetting S! Quick News List	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → Settings → ● → Delete S! Quick News Lists → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not available during automatic updates.</li> </ul>

### Other

Changing background image	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → Settings → ● → Change Skin → ● → Select pattern → ●</p>
Accessing source sites	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → S! Quick News List → ● → Select item → ● → Select title → ● → Select linked title → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Disabling image download	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Quick News → ● → Settings → ● → Show Image → ● → Off → ●</p>

## S! Information Channel

### Receiving Information

Suppressing Information window for new received info	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Notification → ● → Off → ●</p>
Requesting re-delivery	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Get Latest Contents → ● → Yes → ●</p>

### Information Pages

Changing Display Size	<p>On a page, ☺ → Settings → ● → Display Size → ● → Select size → ●</p>
Changing scroll unit	<p>On a page, ☺ → Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●</p>



Copying text	On a page,  → <i>Copy Text</i> →  →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range →
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page,  → <i>Save Items</i> →  →  → Select file →  → <i>Save</i> →  → Enter name →  → <i>Save here</i> →
Opening page properties	On a page,  → <i>Details</i> →

## Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Weather</i> →
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page,  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Font Size</i> →  → Select size →
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Standby Setting</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Icon Update</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Suppressing Information window for weather updates	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Weather Notif.</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →

## e-Books

Copying text	In open page,  → <i>文字列を北</i> →  →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range →
Opening non-943SH e-Books (Library)	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>e-Book Viewer</i> →  → Select file →
Using Library	<i>Start Here</i> →  → <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>e-Book Viewer</i> →  → See below
	<b>Adding Folders</b> → <i>New Folder</i> →  → Enter name →
	<b>Switching Folders</b> → <i>Switch Folders</i> →  → Select folder →
	<b>Renaming Folders/Files</b> Select folder/file →  → <i>Rename</i> →  → Enter name →
	<b>Moving Files</b> Select file →  → <i>Move</i> →  → Select folder →  → <i>Move here</i> →
	<b>Deleting Folders/Files</b> Select folder/file →  → <i>Delete</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
<b>Opening File Properties</b> Select file →  → <i>Details</i> →	



## S! Friend's Status

## ■ Members &amp; Groups

Adding members	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Select Group → Add Member → ● → Select method → ● → Select entry or enter phone number → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Deleting members	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Select Group → Select member → Registration Release → ● → Yes → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>• Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.</p>
Moving members	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Select Group → Select member → Change Group → ● → Select target Group → ●</p>
Renaming Groups	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Select Group → Edit Group Name → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
Rejecting requests	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Settings → ● → Request Reply → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered</b> → ●</p> <p>• Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.</p>
	<p><b>Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore</b> → ●</p> <p>• Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.</p>

## ■ Status &amp; Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Settings → ● → Answer Status → ● → User Setting → ● → Select type → ● → Select Availability → ● → Y</p>
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Settings → ● → Status Setting → ● → Select template → Select Status → ● → Status Icon → ● → Select Pictogram → ● → Status Label → ● → Enter text → ● → Y</p>

## ■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → 私の状況 → ● → Select Status → ● → See below</p>
	<p><b>One Template</b></p> <p>● → Select template → ● → Reset → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p><b>All Templates</b></p> <p>● → Reset All → ● → Yes → ●</p>

## ■ Member Status &amp; Notices

Updating manually	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Settings → ● → Status Update → ●</p>
Opening notices	<p>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status → ● → Status Notif. List → ● → Select notice → ●</p>



## ■ My Details

Sending My Details image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Friend's Status</li> <li>→ ● → Select Group → Select member →</li> <li>☺ → Send Image → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Available when your handset number is saved in Phone Book on member's handset.</li> </ul>
--------------------------	---

## S! Circle Talk

### ■ Member List

Editing individual members	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Circle Talk → ● → Select member → ☺ → See below</p> <p><b>Replacing Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → ● → ● → Select method → ● → Select entry → ●</p> <p><b>Deleting Members</b>  <b>Delete</b> → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Editing Groups	<p><b>Start Here</b> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Circle Talk → ● → Select Group → ☺ → See below</p> <p><b>Editing Group Name/Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → ● → Select target → ● → Edit/enter → ● → Y</p> <p><b>Deleting Group Members</b>  <b>Edit</b> → ● → Select member → ☺ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → Y</p> <p><b>Deleting Groups</b>  <b>Delete</b> → ● → Yes → ●</p>

## ■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Circle Talk → ● → ☺ → Loudspeaker → ● → Off → ●</li> </ul>
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → S! Circle Talk → ● → ☺ → Incoming Calls → ● → Voice Calls or Video Calls → ● → Accept Calls → ●</li> </ul>

## Blog Tool

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Blog Tool → ● → Select entry → ☺ → Edit → ● → Select item → ● → Edit → ☺ → Y</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>Blog Title</b>, omit step of pressing ☺ after editing.</li> </ul>
Deleting entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Entertainment → ● → Blog Tool → ● → Select entry → ☺ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>



## S! Friend's Status

### ? Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

### ? Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

### ? Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

### ? Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

### ? Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

## S! Circle Talk

### ? Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

### ? S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

### ? Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

## Near Chat

### ? Cannot receive Near Chat requests

- S! Appli Request may be set to *Off*.

## S! Quick News

### ? Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.



<b>Handset Security</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
Operations Security .....	13-2
Information Security.....	13-3

<b>Function Control</b> .....	<b>13-4</b>
Using Function Control.....	13-4
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>13-5</b>

# 13

## Handset Security



## Operations Security

### Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

<b>Auto</b>	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
<b>Once</b>	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
<b>At Power On</b>	Lock when handset is powered on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Locks** →



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock** →
- 3 **Select option** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

#### Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter Handset Code →

#### Available Operations while Function Lock is Active

- Power handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

### PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is powered on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** → → **Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** → → **Enter PIN** →

### Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except powering handset on, and activates IC Card Lock. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-23) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).



### Advanced

- Changing PIN
- Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message (P.13-5)

# Information Security

## Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

Mail

Calendar/Tasks

Notepad

Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Locks** →



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock** →

- 3 **Select item** → (✓)

For Phone Book, select **No Refer** (to hide entry names in message lists, Call Log, etc.) or **Refer** and press .

- 4 → **Enter Handset Code**  
→

### Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

## History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 **In Locks menu, History Lock** →

- 2 **Select item** → (✓)

- 3 → **Enter Handset Code**  
→

### Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

## Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 **In Locks menu, Show Secret Data** →

- 2 **On** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

### Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

- 1 **Enter Handset Code** → **Shake handset left or right** →

- Show Secret Data is canceled when handset is closed or Display goes dark in Standby.



## Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	Attach File
Infrared	Wi-Fi
Bluetooth	Yahoo! Keitai
Memory Card	PC Site Browser
USB	IP Service
Digital TV	S! Appli
Messaging	Osaifu-Keitai
Voice Call (placing)	PC Mail
Video Call (placing)	Streaming
USIM (writing)	Flash®
S! Mail	Mobile Widget

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).

### ■ When Accessing Restricted Functions

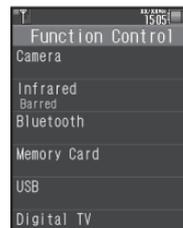
A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.



Message may not appear for some functions.

### Checking Restriction Status

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Phone/Keitai** → → **Locks** →
- 2 **Function Control** →



- Restriction status appears for each function.



## PIN Entry

Changing PIN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Phone/</i>  → <i>Locks</i></li> <li>→ ● → <i>PIN Entry</i> → ● → <i>Change PIN</i> → ●</li> <li>→ Enter current PIN → ● → Enter new PIN →</li> <li>● → Re-enter new PIN → ●</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Activate PIN Entry first.</li> </ul>

## Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Start Here</span> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Phone/</i>  </li> <li>→ <i>Locks</i> → ● → <i>Set Lock Message</i> → ● →</li> </ul>
	See below
	<p><b>Saving Message</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Message</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● →</li> <li>Enter message → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Checking Message</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Check Message</i> → ●</li> </ul>

	<p><b>Suppressing Message</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Display Setting</i> → ● → <i>Don't Show</i> → ● →</li> <li>Enter Handset Code → ●</li> </ul>
--	--



<b>Data Folder .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
Opening Files .....	14-3
Managing Files & Folders.....	14-4

<b>Memory Card.....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
Using Memory Card .....	14-5
<b>Additional Functions.....</b>	<b>14-7</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>14-10</b>

# 14

## Data Folder & Memory Card



## Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

### ■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to <b>DCIM</b> )
Ring Songs-Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Widget*	Widgets
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Call*	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

\*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

### Checking Memory Status

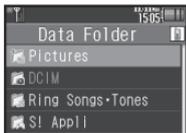
☉ ➔ Data Folder ➔ ☉ ➔ Memory Status ➔ ☉ ➔ Phone Memory or Memory Card ➔ ☉

- The category **Others**: includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



# Opening Files

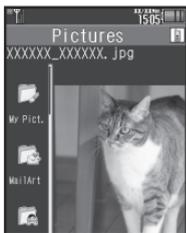
## 1 Data Folder



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press

## 2 Select folder

To open a sub folder, select it and press .



File List

## 3 Select file



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press .

### Handling Open Images

- Press to enlarge, or press / to open next or previous image. Press to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

### Attaching to Mail

After , select file **Send/ Blog** **As Message**

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

### Copy Protected Files ( or )

- Some functions may be unavailable.

## Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

### 1 In file list, select file

### 2 Slide Show

- Slide Show starts.

### 3 Slide Show stops

### Changing Interval

After , **Speed** **Select speed**

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press / or to advance or reverse frame.

### Note

- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

## Advanced

- Switching file list view
- Changing image quality
- Changing Slide Show settings
- Using files as Wallpaper
- Using files as ringtones
- Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.14-7 - 14-8)





## Using Memory Card

Use microSD/microSDHC Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 943SH.

- Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see P.17-23 "microSD Memory Card Compatibility."
- If inserted, captured images, downloads and other files save to Memory Card. (My Pictograms and Graphic Mail templates save to handset.)

### Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

### Inserting & Removing

First, power handset off.

#### 1 Open Slot Cover



#### 2 Insert card



- With terminal side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

#### 3 Close cover

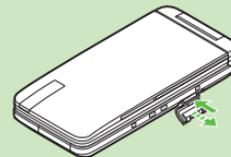


#### If Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

#### Removing Memory Card

- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



## Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1 **Settings** **Phone/** **Memory Card**

2 **Format Card** **Yes**

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3 **Enter Handset Code**

4 **Yes**

- To cancel, choose **No** and press

## Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

## Opening Memory Card Files

1 **Data Folder**

2 **Change to MemoryCard**

- Memory Card Data Folder opens.

3 **Select folder**

To open a sub folder, select it and press .

4 **Select file**

## Advanced

- Using HTML files on Memory Card (P.14-9)



File/Folder View Settings	
Switching file list view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ ☰ → <b>Manage Items</b> → ● → <b>Change List View</b> → ● → Select option → ●</li> </ul>
Changing image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ● → ☰ → <b>Switch Display</b> (Picture Quality for Flash® files) → ● → Select quality → ●</li> </ul>
Changing transition effect when using 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ Select file → ● → ☰ → <b>Switch Effect</b> → ●</li> <li>→ Select effect → ●</li> </ul>
Changing Slide Show settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ ● → Select file → ● → ☰ → <b>Slide Show</b> → ●</li> <li>→ ☰ → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Playing Once</b></p> <p><b>Repeat</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Playing Music</b></p> <p><b>BGM Settings</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</p>
	<p><b>Changing Music</b></p> <p><b>BGM Settings</b> → ● → <b>Play Ring Tones</b> → ●</p> <p>Select folder → ● → Select file → ●</p>

Changing Slide Show settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> ● → <b>Data Folder</b> → ● → Select folder → ●</li> <li>→ ● → Select file → ● → ☰ → <b>Slide Show</b> → ●</li> <li>→ ☰ → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Key Illumination Pattern</b></p> <p><b>Illumination</b> → ● → <b>Key Pattern</b> → ● → <b>Select pattern</b> → ● → </p>
	<p><b>Disabling Key Illumination</b></p> <p><b>Illumination</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ● → </p>
	<p><b>Hiding Softkeys</b></p> <p><b>SW Guide Display</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p>
Showing Softkeys in image view	<p><b>Setting Backlight to Turn Off after a Period of Time</b></p> <p><b>Always Backlight</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Choosing <b>Off</b> applies Display Backlight settings. (Display remains on during Slide Show regardless of Display Saving setting.)</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Image Transition Effect</b></p> <p><b>Switch</b> → ● → Select effect → ●</p>



## Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Vertical or Horizontal</i> → ● → ●</li> <li>● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringtones	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Set as Ringtone</i> → ● → ●</li> <li><i>Select item</i> → ●</li> <li>● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.</li> <li>● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringvideos	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Videos</i> → ● → ●</li> <li><i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Set as Ring Video</i> → ● → ●</li> <li><i>Select item</i> → ●</li> <li>● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.</li> </ul>
Saving Phone Book entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Save to Phone Book</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>As New Entry</i> → ● → <i>Complete other fields</i> → ☒</li> <li>● To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ ☒ → <i>Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice</i> → ●</li> </ul>

## Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select folder</i> → ☒ → <i>Manage Items</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Rename</i> → ● → <i>Enter name</i> → ●</li> <li>● Assign different names to folders within a layer.</li> </ul>
Opening file properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Details</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Renaming files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ <i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Manage Items</i> → ● → ●</li> <li><i>Rename</i> → ● → <i>Enter name</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Sorting files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ●</li> <li>→ ☒ → <i>Manage Items</i> → ● → ● → <i>Sort</i> → ● → ●</li> <li><i>Select method</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting files & created folders	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <small>[Start Here]</small> ● → <i>Data Folder</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ● → ● → <i>See below</i> </div> <p><b>Single Files</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Select file</i> → ☒ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul> <p><b>Folder &amp; Files Within</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Select folder</i> → ☒ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>



Handling SVG files	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ⇒ <b>Data Folder</b>  ⇒  ⇒ <b>Other Documents</b>  ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select file</b>  ⇒  ⇒ <b>See below</b></p>
	<p><b>Line Scroll</b> </p>
	<p><b>Page Scroll</b>  (Up),  (Down),  (Right),  (Left)</p>
	<p><b>Zoom</b>  (Zoom out),  (Zoom in)</p>
	<p><b>Rotate</b>  (Counterclockwise),  (Clockwise)</p>
	<p><b>Key Action Mode</b> </p>
	<p><b>Default View</b> </p>
<b>Memory Card</b>	
Using HTML files on Memory Card	<p> ⇒ <b>Settings</b>  ⇒  <b>Phone/</b>  ⇒ <b>Memory Card</b>  ⇒ <b>SD Local Contents</b>  ⇒ <b>Select title</b> </p>



## Managing Files/Folders

### ? Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)

### ? Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

### ? Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 961 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.

### ? Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, # and " are not supported.



<b>Wi-Fi</b> .....	<b>15-2</b>
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) .....	15-2
Registering Private Access Points ...	15-3
Using Public Wireless LAN Services...	15-6
<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>15-7</b>
Transferring Files via Infrared .....	15-8
Exchanging Contact Information...	15-10
<b>IC Transmission</b> .....	<b>15-11</b>
Transferring Files via IC Transmission	
.....	15-12
<b>Bluetooth®</b> .....	<b>15-13</b>
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®...	15-14

<b>External Device Connection</b> .....	<b>15-17</b>
Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc	
Recorder.....	15-17
<b>Backup</b> .....	<b>15-18</b>
Basics .....	15-18
Backup & Restore .....	15-19
<b>S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)</b> ...	<b>15-20</b>
About SAB.....	15-20
Using Sync Commands.....	15-22
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>15-23</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>15-27</b>

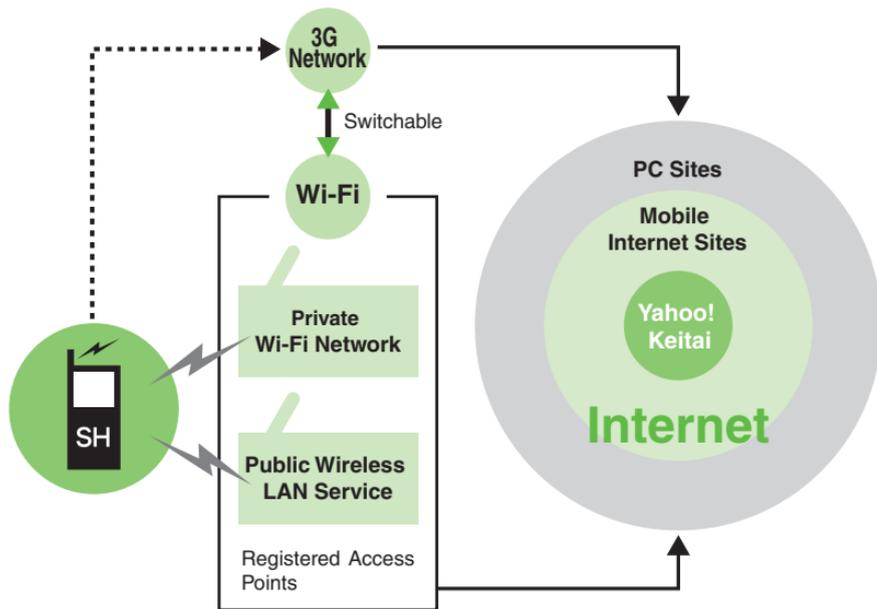
# 15

## Connectivity & File Backup

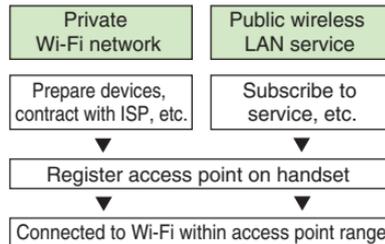


# Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

943SH supports wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") that enables Internet connection via private Wi-Fi network, public wireless LAN service, etc. Handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible, allowing high-speed communication without switching networks. Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi.



## Service Usage Outline



## Registering Access Points

- Save access point information to handset to use Wi-Fi.
  - Handset connects to registered access points automatically.
- Access point search may take some time depending on the number of registered access points.

## Important Wi-Fi Usage Note

- Depending on signal conditions, connection may automatically switch from Wi-Fi to 3G incurring packet transmission fees; set confirmation to appear as needed.

## Advanced

- Disabling Wi-Fi
- Showing confirmation when switching networks
- Protecting access point information by Handset Code
- Specifying channel range
- Opening access point properties
- Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties (P.15-23)



## Registering Private Access Points

- Broadband connection, ISP subscription and Wi-Fi access point are required.
- To connect to corporate access points, consult the system administrator for settings.
- Configure settings on Wi-Fi access points beforehand. (For details, see the access point guide.)
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.

### Using AOSS™ or WPS

AOSS™ and WPS are systems/standards for easy access point registration and security configuration; available on compatible Wi-Fi access points.

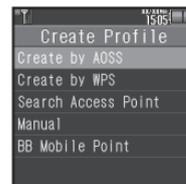
### Using AOSS™

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Connectivity** → **Wi-Fi** →



Wi-Fi Menu

- 2 **Create Profile** →



Create Profile Menu

- A message appears if no access point is registered; read and then press .

- 3 **Create by AOSS** →

- If not using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi, press before 4.

- 4

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press .
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: **On**).

### Advanced

- Managing registered access points (P.15-23)



## Using WPS

Example: Push Button Configuration (PBC) method

### 1 In Create Profile menu, Create by WPS ➔ ●

- If not using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi, press  before .

### 2 ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press .
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: **On**).

## Using PIN Method

- Enter an eight-digit number (PIN) generated by handset into the access point.

After ,  ➔ **PIN entry** ➔ ● ➔ ●

➔ Enter number on Display into access point ➔ ●

## Access Point Search

### 1 In Create Profile menu, Search Access Point ➔ ●



- To cancel, press .

### 2 Select access point ➔ ●

### 3 Enter corresponding security key ➔ ●

### 4 Use or Not Use ➔ ●

### 5 Yes ➔ ●

- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).

## If Encryption Method is WEP

- After , authentication method selection window opens. Select a method according to the access point.

## Advanced

-  ● Setting IP address ● Setting DNS server addresses ● Disabling Wi-Fi when using Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser (**P.15-23 - 15-24**)

## Registering Access Points Manually

Check access point information beforehand.

### Major Items

#### Access Point Profile

Profile Name	Enter a name
SSID	Enter the same SSID as the access point

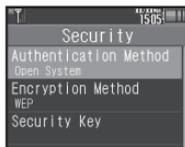
#### Security

Authentication Method	Supported authentication methods vary by access point; set accordingly
Encryption Method	Supported encryption methods vary by authentication method; set according to access point
Security Key	Enter the security key (also called "encryption key," "network key" or "passphrase") set on the access point

### Entering Information

Example: Authentication Method is WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK.

- 1** In **Create Profile** menu, **Manual** →
- 2** **Profile Name** → → **Enter name** →
- 3** **SSID** → → **Enter SSID** →
- 4** **Security** →



Security Menu

- 5** **Authentication Method** → → **Select method** →
- 6** **Encryption Method** → → **Select method** →
- 7** **Security Key** → → **Enter security key** →



- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: *On*).

If Authentication Method is *Open System* & Encryption Method is *No Authentication*

- Omit security key entry.

If Encryption Method is *WEP*

- In , *<Empty>* → → **Enter WEP key** → → → **From**

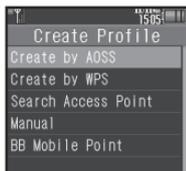


## Using Public Wireless LAN Services

- Subscription with the corresponding service provider, etc. is required.
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi provides access to BB mobilepoint service. For more about BB mobilepoint, see SOFTBANK TELECOM Website (P.17-23).

### Using BB mobilepoint

- 1  → **Tools** →  →  → **Connectivity** → **Wi-Fi** →
- 2 **Create Profile** →



Create Profile Menu

- A message appears if no access point is registered; read and then press .

- 3 **BB Mobile Point** →



- 4 **Password** →  → **Enter password** →

- 5

- 6 **Yes** →

- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).

### Using Other Public Wireless LAN Services

- Check public wireless LAN service information beforehand.
- **Connection to some public wireless LAN services may not be possible.**

- 1 In **Create Profile** menu, **Manual** →
- 2 **Complete fields**
  - For details, see P.15-5 "Entering Information."
- 3 **Advanced Settings** →  → **WISPr Settings** →
- 4 **Use ID** →  → **Enter ID** →
- 5 **Password** →  → **Enter password** →
- 6 **Switch On/Off** →  → **On** →
- 7  →  →
- 8 **Yes** → 
  - Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).



## Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 943SH and compatible devices.

943SH supports IrSimple™ high-speed wireless communications protocol; exchange large image files instantly with compatible mobile phones, printers, etc.

### Transferable Files

Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks	Data Folder

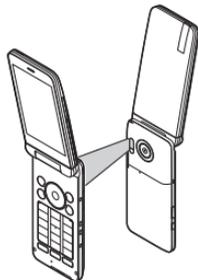
- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Getting Started

#### Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.

- Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.
- 943SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not transfer properly.

### Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
IrSS Transfer	Exchange single JPEG image files with compatible devices at high speed

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

#### Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

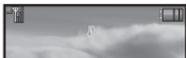


## Transferring Files via Infrared

### Receiving Files

1  → **Tools** →  →  →  → **Connectivity** → **Infrared** →

2 **Switch On/Off** →  →  → **On(3 min.)** →



- Infrared is activated.
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

3 **Connection request arrives**



Request Window

4 **Perform subsequent operations**

- To cancel transfer, press .

### Subsequent Operations

#### ■ One File Transfer

Yes →  → Yes →

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

#### ■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →

→ Enter Authorization Code →

→ **As New Items** →

#### ■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →

→ Enter Authorization Code →

→ **Delete All & Save** →  → Yes

→

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

#### ■ IrSS Transfer

Yes →

- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

### Advanced

- Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size (P.15-24)



## Sending Files

## One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

- 1  ➔ **Select entry** ➔  ➔ **Send Entry** ➔ 
- 2 **Via Infrared** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
  - When complete, entry search window returns.

## All File Transfer

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔  ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Infrared** ➔ 
- 2 **Send All** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 
- 4 **Select item** ➔  (  /  ) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ 
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts** ➔ 

## Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
**Yes or No** ➔ 

## Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

- 1  ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ 
- 2 **Pictures or DCIM** ➔ 
  - For *DCIM*, select a folder and press .
- 3 **Select image** ➔  (Long)
- 4 **Yes or No** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
  - Images may be reduced automatically before transfer depending on the size.
  - When complete, file list returns.
  - Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

## Advanced

-   Sending My Details  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.15-24)



## Exchanging Contact Information

Exchange name, phone numbers, mail addresses, and other contact info with other compatible handsets via infrared. Read **P.15-7** "Infrared Precautions" beforehand.

### Receiving Profiles

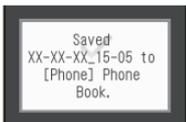
#### 1 (Long)



Exchange Profile Menu

#### 2 Receive

#### 3 Profile received



- Received profile is saved to Phone Book.

### Sending Profiles

#### 1 In Exchange Profile menu, Send

#### Changing Profile Items to Send

[Exchange Profile Menu] *Send*

*Settings* → Select item

(/) → Complete selection

#### Opening My Details

[Exchange Profile Menu] *My Details*



## IC Transmission

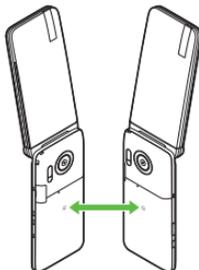
Wirelessly transfer files between 943SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see P.15-7.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

### Getting Started

#### IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

### Transfer Options

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Transfer single files
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

#### Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

### Advanced

-   Disabling one file reception (P.15-24)



## Transferring Files via IC Transmission

### Receiving Files

#### 1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

#### 2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

### Subsequent Operations

#### ■ One File Transfer

Yes →  → Yes → 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

#### ■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →

 → Enter Authorization Code →

 → As New Items → 

#### ■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →

 → Enter Authorization Code →

 → Delete All & Save →  → Yes → 

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

### Sending Files

#### One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  → Select entry →  → Send Entry → 

2 Via IC Transmission → 

3 Yes →  → Transfer starts

#### All File Transfer

1  → Tools →  →   
Connectivity → IC Transmission → 

2 Send All → 

3 Yes →  → Enter Handset Code → 

4 Select item →  (/) → Complete selection → 

5 Enter Authorization Code →   
 → Transfer starts → 

#### Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
Yes or No → 

### Advanced

-   Sending My Details  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.15-24)

## Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 943SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
- 943SH supports simultaneous connection with two devices. (May be unavailable depending on the device type.)
- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
  - Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by the Bluetooth SIG.
  - Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
  - Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

### Getting Started

#### Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth® device to use with handset properly. Maximum transmission range for transfers between 943SH handsets is ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)

#### Important Handsfree Device Usage Note

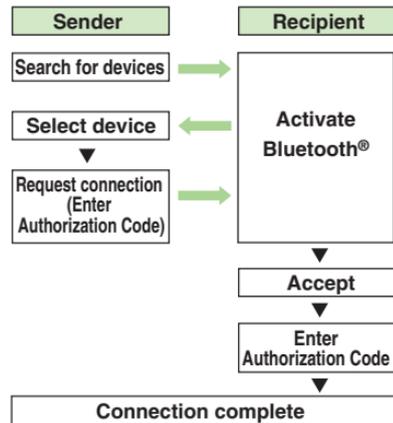
- Handle call operations on the device in use.

#### Bluetooth® Watches

- Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:
 

■ Clock sync	■ Alarm notice
■ News notice	■ Mail notice
■ Remote Shutter	■ Mode Settings
■ Quick Silent	■ Caller ID notice
■ Hold calls	■ Show Operator Name
- For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

### Bluetooth® Connection



#### Authorization Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.
- Authorization Code entry may not be required depending on the other device.

### Advanced

- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Changing Bluetooth® name for handset
- Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (And more on **P.15-24 - 15-25**)
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock
- Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.15-25**)



# Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

## Activating Bluetooth®

### 1 (Long)



- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press

## Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

### Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** →



Bluetooth Menu

- 2 **Add Device** →



- To disable confirmation, press before .

### 3

- Found devices are listed after search.
- To cancel search, press .

### 4 Select device →

If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

### 5 Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device → → **Pairing complete**

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

### Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices

- In , **Yes** → → **Pairing complete**
- If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

## Advanced

- Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu
- Editing Paired Device list
- Disconnecting devices
- Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
- Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (P.15-25)



## Connecting Paired Devices

### 1 In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➔ ●



Paired Device List

### 2 Select device ➔ ●

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose **Yes** and press ●.

- The device is connected and  (preferred) appears.

## Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

### 1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

### 2 Yes ➔ ●



### 3 Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➔ ●

- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

#### Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices

In ☺, Yes ➔ ●

- If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.



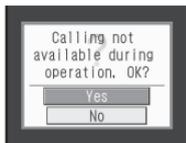
## Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see P.15-7.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.

### Receiving Files

#### 1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

#### 2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

### Subsequent Operations

#### One File Transfer

Yes →  → Yes → 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

#### All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →  → As New Items → 

#### All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Delete All & Save →  → Yes → 

### Sending Files

#### One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  → Select entry →  → Send Entry → 

2 Via Bluetooth → 

3 Select device → 

4 Yes →  → Transfer starts

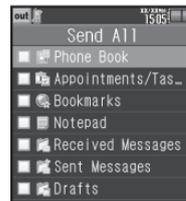
- When complete, entry search window returns.

### All File Transfer

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* → 

2 Select device →  → Yes → 

3 Enter Handset Code → 



4 Select item →  (/ ) → Complete selection →  → Transfer starts → 

#### Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:  
Yes or No → 

## Advanced

-  Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.15-26)

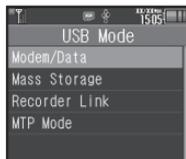
## Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder

### Connecting PC

#### Accessing Memory Card

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset. USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### 1 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable



### 2 Mass Storage →

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

### 3 Yes →

#### Connection ends

- Disconnect USB Cable.

#### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
  - **Tools** → → → **Connectivity**
  - **USB Mode** → → → **From 2**
  - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

#### Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

#### Utility Software

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

#### Mobile Data Communication Fees

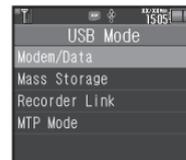
- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

### Connecting Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable to transfer recorded programs to Memory Card without removing card from handset.

- Compatible only with SHARP Blu-ray Disc recorders. For details, see **P.17-23** "Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders."
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### 1 Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable



### 2 Recorder Link →

- Transfer files from Blu-ray Disc recorder to Memory Card.

### 3 Yes →

#### Connection ends

- Open transferred files via **Recorder Contents** in TV menu or Media Player menu (Videos).

#### If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
  - **Tools** → → → **Connectivity**
  - **USB Mode** → → → **From 2**



## Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

### Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once. Items with \* are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Sent Messages*
Calendar*	Drafts*
Tasks*	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks*	Contents Keys
Notepad*	Data Folder
Mail Groups*	User Dictionary
Received Msg.*	

### Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

### Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.



# Backup & Restore

## Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Phone/** → **Backup/Restore** →



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** → → Enter Handset Code →
- 3 **Yes** →
- 4 **Select item** → (□/✓) → **Complete selection**
  - For **Phone Book**, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

- 5 → **Yes** →
  - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** → →

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, → Select option → → From 5

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

## Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items: (Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

- 1 In Backup/Restore menu, **Restore Selected Items** → → Enter Handset Code →
- 2 **Yes** →
- 3 **Select item** → (□/✓) → **Complete selection**

- 4
  - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** →
  - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** →
  - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** → →

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, → Select option → → From 4

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

### Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item → → **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** → → From 4

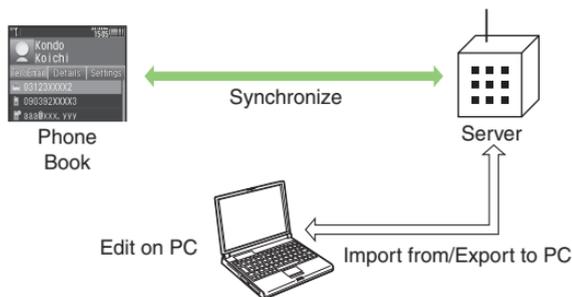
## Advanced

- Backing up all items Encoding data for backup Restoring all items Deleting backup files (P.15-26)



## About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.15-21).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-23).
- Synchronization incurs packet transmission fees.

### Auto Synchronization

- When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Auto Sync Settings: **On**, Set Frequency: **After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)**, Sync Mode Setting: **Normal**); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

## SAB Sync Commands & Features

Synchronization	<b>Normal</b>	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Sync from Client</b>	Add Phone Book changes to SAB <sup>2</sup>
	<b>Backup</b>	Export Phone Book content to SAB <sup>3</sup>
	<b>Sync from Server</b>	Add SAB changes to Phone Book <sup>4</sup>
	<b>Restore</b>	Import SAB content to Phone Book <sup>5</sup>
Edit on PC	<b>Import from PC</b>	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	<b>Export to PC</b>	Export SAB content to PC address book
	<b>Sync Lock</b>	Prevent synchronization from handset
Send Notice <sup>6</sup>	<b>Birthday Notification</b>	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	<b>Email Address Notification<sup>7</sup></b>	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	<b>"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification<sup>8</sup></b>	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	<b>Tomodachi Email Filter<sup>9</sup></b>	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

<sup>1</sup> If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

<sup>2</sup> Unrelated SAB changes remain.

<sup>3</sup> Any existing SAB content is deleted.

<sup>4</sup> Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

<sup>5</sup> Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

<sup>6</sup> Access this function via handset (My SoftBank; Japanese) or a PC.

<sup>7</sup> Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

<sup>8</sup> Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

<sup>9</sup> Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



## Service Usage Outline

### Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese).



### Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



### Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

## Precautions

### ■ Unsynchronizable Items

These Phone Book settings are lost:

- Picture, Tone, Vibration, Light

### ■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, performing synchronization via **Normal**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, performing synchronization via **Normal**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

### ■ Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, synchronization reflects lower limit.

### ■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

### ■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

#### • SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.

#### • Other SoftBank 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.

#### • V8 Series

Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

### ■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

## Advanced

- Canceling auto synchronization (P.15-26)



## Using Sync Commands

### Normal (Start Sync)

Synchronize Phone Book and SAB via Normal.

- 1 → *Phone* → → *S! Addressbook Back-up* →



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 *Start Sync* →
- 3 → *Synchronization complete*

#### Canceling Synchronization

- *Yes* →

### Other Sync Commands

Available Commands:

<b>Sync from Client</b>	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
<b>Backup</b>	Export Phone Book content to SAB; any existing SAB content is deleted
<b>Sync from Server</b>	Add SAB changes to Phone Book
<b>Restore</b>	Import SAB content to Phone Book; any existing Phone Book content is deleted

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), synchronization is performed via Normal regardless of selection.

- 1 In *S! Addressbook menu, Details* →
- 2 *Backup/Restore* →

- 3 *Select command* →
- 4 → *Synchronization complete*

#### Canceling Synchronization

- *Yes* →

### Advanced

- Changing auto synchronization settings Confirming password Opening log Deleting log records (P.15-26)

## Wi-Fi

## ■ General

Disabling Wi-Fi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → Off → ●</li> <li>● Set to <b>Off</b> when not using Wi-Fi to extend Battery Time.</li> </ul>
Showing confirmation when switching networks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Common Settings → ● → Switch Notification → ● → Switch from 3G to Wi-Fi or Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G → ● → On → ●</li> </ul>
Protecting access point information by Handset Code	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Common Settings → ● → Handset Code Lock Setting → ● → On → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</li> </ul>
Specifying channel range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Common Settings → ● → Channel Range → ● → Select range → ●</li> <li>● In some countries, there are restrictions on available channels. Select channel range accordingly while outside Japan.</li> </ul>
Opening access point properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Connect Information → ●</li> </ul>
Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Show MAC Address → ●</li> </ul>

## ■ Managing Access Points

Managing registered access points	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Profile List → ● → Select access point → ☺ → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Changing Priority</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change Priority → ● → Select target location → ●</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Editing</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Edit → ● → Complete fields → ☺</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Deleting</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete → ● → Yes → ●</li> </ul>

## ■ Advanced Settings

When finished with Advanced Settings, complete other fields to register an access point.

Setting IP address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → ☺ Connectivity → Wi-Fi → ● → Create Profile → ● → Manual → ● → Advanced Settings → ● → IP Settings → ● → IP Address → ● → Manual → ● → See below</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Entering IP Address</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Address → ● → Enter numbers → ● → ☺</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Entering Subnet Mask</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Subnet Mask → ● → Enter numbers → ● → ☺</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Entering Default Gateway</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default Gateway → ● → Enter numbers → ● → ☺</li> </ul>



Setting DNS server addresses	<p>Start Here → Tools → Connectivity → Wi-Fi → Create Profile → Manual → Advanced Settings → IP Settings → DNS Server Address → Manual → See below</p> <p><b>Entering Primary DNS</b> Primary DNS → Enter numbers →</p> <p><b>Entering Secondary DNS</b> Secondary DNS → Enter numbers →</p>
	<p>Disabling Wi-Fi when using Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Tools → Connectivity → Wi-Fi → Create Profile → Manual → Advanced Settings → Yahoo! Keitai Use Setting → Not Use →</p>
	<p><b>Infrared</b></p> <p>Activating Infrared via Main Menu Tools → Connectivity → Infrared → Switch On/Off → On(3 min.) →</p> <p>Sending My Details Send My Card → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts</p> <p>Sending non-Phone Book files In file list, select file → Send (or Send/Blog) → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts</p> <p>Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size Tools → Connectivity → Infrared → IrSS Key Setting → Send via IrSS →</p>

## IC Transmission

Disabling one file reception	Tools → Connectivity → IC Transmission → 1 File Reception → Off(Disabled) →
Sending My Details	Send My Card → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → Send (or Send/Blog) → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts

## Bluetooth®

## ■ General

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Visibility → Hide My Phone →
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Bluetooth Timeout → Select time →
Switching audio output to wireless device	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Sound Output → Bluetooth Device → • Bluetooth Device is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Device Name → Enter name →
Talking on handsfree device	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Handsfree Setting → Handsfree Mode →



Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>My Device Settings</b> → ● → <b>S! Appli Request</b> → ● → <b>Off</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Receiving connection requests while connected to a device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>My Device Settings</b> → ● → <b>Plural Connect Standby</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>My Device Details</b> → ●</li> <li>● Press (Y) to view service details.</li> </ul>
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Switch On/Off</b> → ● → <b>On</b> → ●</li> </ul>

### ■ Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Setting Watch</b> → ● → <b>Set BT-Watch Time</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> <li>● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</li> </ul>
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Setting Watch</b> → ● → <b>Notification</b> → ● → <b>Select item</b> → ● → <b>Permit or Prohibit</b> → ●</li> <li>● Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</li> </ul>

### ■ Paired Devices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Paired Devices</b> → ● → <b>Select device</b> → ☺ → See below</li> </ul>
Editing Paired Device list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Renaming Paired Devices</b> <b>Change Name</b> → ● → <b>Enter name</b> → ●</li> <li><b>Deleting Paired Devices</b> <b>Delete</b> → ● → <b>Yes</b> → ●</li> <li>● To delete a device connected to handset, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Disconnecting devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Paired Devices</b> → ● → <b>Select connected device</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Paired Devices</b> → ● → <b>Select device</b> → ☺ → <b>Select Service</b> → ● → <b>Handsfree function or Audio function</b> → ●</li> </ul>
Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Start Here] ● → <b>Tools</b> → ● → ☺ <b>Connectivity</b> → <b>Bluetooth</b> → ● → <b>Paired Devices</b> → ● → <b>Select device</b> → ☺ → <b>Set to Prior Connect</b> → ● → See below</li> <li><b>For Handsfree Telephony</b> <b>Handsfree On</b> → ●</li> <li>● For <b>Handsfree On</b>, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.</li> <li><b>For Audio Output</b> <b>Audio On</b> → ●</li> <li>● For <b>Audio On</b>, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when Ⓜ Sound Output is set to <b>Bluetooth Device</b>.</li> </ul>



## ■ Sending Files

Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● →  →  → <i>Send My Card</i> → ● → <i>Via Bluetooth</i> → ● → <i>Select device</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Transfer starts</i></li> </ul>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In file list, select file →  → <i>Send (or Send/Blog)</i> → ● → <i>Via Bluetooth</i> → ● → <i>Select device</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Transfer starts</i></li> </ul>

## Backup

## ■ Backup &amp; Restore

Backing up all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● →  → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → ● → <i>Backup All Items</i> → ● → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Backup complete</i> → ● → ●</li> </ul>
Encoding data for backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● →  → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → ● → <i>Settings/Manage</i> → ● → <i>Encode Settings</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ● → <i>On</i> → ●</li> <li>• Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.</li> </ul>
Restoring all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● →  → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → ● → <i>Restore All Items</i> → ● → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → <i>Restore complete</i> → ● → ●</li> </ul>

## ■ Backup Files

Deleting backup files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Settings</i> → ● →  → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → ● → <i>Settings/Manage</i> → ● → <i>File Management</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ● → <i>Select file</i> → ● → <input type="checkbox"/>/✓ → <i>Complete selection</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>
-----------------------	---

## S! Addressbook Back-up

Canceling auto synchronization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Phone</i> → ● → <i>S! Addressbook Back-up</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Auto Sync Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set On/Off</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Changing auto synchronization settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> → ● → <i>Phone</i> → ● → <i>S! Addressbook Back-up</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Auto Sync Settings</i> → ● → <i>See below</i></li> <li>• Set <i>Set On/Off</i> to <i>On</i> beforehand.</li> <li><b>Changing Auto Sync Frequency</b> <i>Set Frequency</i> → ● → <i>Select frequency</i> → ● → <i>Enter/select date/time/day of the week</i> → ●</li> <li>• For <i>After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)</i>, omit steps for date, time, etc.</li> <li><b>Changing Auto Sync Command</b> <i>Sync Mode Setting</i> → ● → <i>Select command</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Confirming password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> → <i>メニューリスト</i> → ● → <i>My SoftBank</i> → ● → <i>English</i> → ● → <i>Password confirmation for S! Address Book</i> → ●</li> <li>• Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Opening log	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● → <i>Phone</i> → ● → <i>S! Addressbook Back-up</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Sync Log</i> → ● → <i>Select record</i> → ●</li> </ul>
Deleting log records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Start Here</b> → ● → <i>Phone</i> → ● → <i>S! Addressbook Back-up</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Sync Log</i> → ● → <i>See below</i></li> <li><b>One Record</b> <i>Select record</i> →  → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> <li><b>All Records</b>  → <i>Delete All</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●</li> </ul>



## Wi-Fi

### Wi-Fi disconnects

- Connection is interrupted automatically if Display goes dark after a period of inactivity; restored when Display reactivates.

### Cannot connect to Wi-Fi

- Depending on access point settings, handset may not connect to Wi-Fi when powered on outside 3G range. In this case, pass through the 3G service area carrying the handset and retry.

### Login page opens when using public wireless LAN service

- Some public wireless LAN services require authentication via Direct Browser. Enter corresponding user ID/ password.

## File Transfer

### Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

### Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

### Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone, Light, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

### Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm tone/video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

### Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

### Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

### Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

### Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.



### Infrared

#### ? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.

### Backup & Restore

#### ? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

#### ? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

#### ? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

#### ? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

#### ? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

#### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

#### ? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser/Direct Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

### ■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

#### ? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

### ■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

#### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



<b>Date &amp; Time .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
<b>Display &amp; Illumination .....</b>	<b>16-3</b>
Language.....	16-3
Image & Text.....	16-3
Display & Backlight.....	16-3
Standby Display.....	16-4
Key Backlight.....	16-4
Key Illumination .....	16-4
<b>Incoming Transmissions.....</b>	<b>16-5</b>
Handset Response .....	16-5

<b>Sounds .....</b>	<b>16-6</b>
System Sounds .....	16-6
Additional Sound Settings .....	16-6
<b>Connectivity .....</b>	<b>16-7</b>
Network .....	16-7
IP Service .....	16-7
<b>Reset.....</b>	<b>16-8</b>
Restoring Default Settings.....	16-8

# 16

## Handset Customization



## 🔧 Date & Time Settings

### Date & Time

[Start Here](#) ⓪ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⓪ ➔ In Sound/Display menu, *Date & Time* ➔ ⓪

Setting the date and time	<i>Set Date/Time</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ Enter the year ➔ Enter the month ➔ Enter the day ➔ Enter the time ➔ ⓪
Correcting Clock manually	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Manual</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ⓪
Disabling auto Clock correction	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ ⓪
Setting auto Clock correction timing	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ Select item ➔ ⓪ (☐/☑) ➔ Yr ➔ <input type="text"/>
Activating Daylight Saving	<i>Daylight Saving</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ⓪
Changing Time Zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ Select area ➔ ⓪
Adding custom time zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ Enter city name ➔ ⓪ ➔ + or - ➔ ⓪ ➔ Enter time difference ➔ ⓪
Changing time format to 12 hour	<i>Time Format</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>12 Hour</i> ➔ ⓪
Changing date format	<i>Date Format</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ Select option ➔ ⓪
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	<i>Calendar Format</i> ➔ ⓪ ➔ <i>Monday-Sunday</i> ➔ ⓪



# Display & Illumination Settings 1

## Language

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ Sound/Display menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

**Language** or 言語選択 ➔ ● ➔ **English** or 日本語 ➔ ●

## Image & Text

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** ➔ ●

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ● ➔ **Specify image area** ➔ ●  
 ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Customized Screen** ➔ ● ➔ ●  
 ● Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Selecting image enhancement option for Standby and video playback

**Vivid Mode** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

**Dial Number** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ●

Showing a message each time handset is powered on

**Greeting Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Edit Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter message** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

## Display & Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Disabling display transition effects

**Display Effects** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Time Out** ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●  
 ● For custom illumination time, select **Other**.

Changing Display Brightness

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ ●

Canceling/activating Light Sensor

**Backlight** ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔  (  /  ) ➔ ●

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

**Display Saving** ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●



## 🔧 Display & Illumination Settings 2

### Standby Display

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ ● ➔ **Standby Display** ➔ ●

Changing Clock/Calendar **Clock/Calendar** ➔ ● ➔ **Select type** ➔ ●

Selecting Mobile Widget display option **Show Widget** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Showing Network service provider name in Standby **Show Operator Name** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

### Key Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Phone** ➔ ●

Disabling key Backlight illumination **Set Key Light** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

### Key Illumination

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔ ●

Setting Key Illumination pattern by action **Set Key Illumi** ➔ ● ➔ **Select action** ➔ ● ➔ **Key Pattern** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ●

Disabling Key Illumination by action **Set Key Illumi** ➔ ● ➔ **Select action** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●





# Sound Settings

## System Sounds

**Start Here** ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔ ●

Enabling Keypad Tones	<b>System Sounds</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Keypad Tones</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select tone</b> ➔ ●
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	<b>System Sounds</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>S! Circle Talk</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select tone</b> ➔ ●
Changing other System Sounds	<b>System Sounds</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select item</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Tone or Sound</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select tone/file</b> ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For files with limited usage period, choose <b>Yes</b> and press ●.</li> </ul>
Disabling System Sounds	<b>System Sounds</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select item</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Tone or Sound</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not available for <b>S! Circle Talk</b>.</li> <li>• For <b>Keypad Tone</b>, omit <b>Tone</b> or <b>Sound</b> selection step.</li> </ul>
Changing System Sound duration	<b>System Sounds</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select item</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Duration</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Select/enter time</b> ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not available for <b>Keypad Tones</b> or <b>S! Circle Talk</b>.</li> </ul>
Changing System Sound volume	<b>Volume</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>General Volume</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Adjust level</b> ➔ ●

## Additional Sound Settings

**Start Here** ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ Sound/Display menu

Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	<b>Ringer Output</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Earphone</b> ➔ ●
Activating Speaker surround	<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>Surround</b> ➔ ● ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ ●



# Connectivity Settings

Network	
	<a href="#">Start Here</a> → Settings → Network
Selecting a Network manually	Select Network → Manual → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select target location → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks to the end	Select Network → Set Preferred → Add to End → Select Network
Deleting preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select Network → Delete
Adding Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Add → Enter country code → Enter Network code → Enter name → Select NW Type → Select type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After selecting <b>Add New Network</b> and pressing <b>Enter</b>, Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press <b>Enter</b> again and proceed.</li> </ul>
Editing Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Change → Edit in the same manner as adding Networks
Deleting Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Delete
Switching Network service between 3G and GSM manually	Select Service → Manual → Select service
Refreshing Network connection	Re-search Signal
Retrieving Network Information	Retrieve NW Info → Yes
Checking Network status	Network Info
Editing connection names for mobile data communication	External Device → Select name → Edit
Clearing connection names for mobile data communication	External Device → Reset → Enter Handset Code → Yes
IP Service	
	<a href="#">Start Here</a> → Settings → Phone/ → Locks
Disabling IP Service	IP Service Setting → Off → Enter Handset Code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Off</b>, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are disabled.</li> </ul>



# Reset Settings

## Restoring Default Settings

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Phone/☎ → Master Reset →

Restoring default handset settings	<p><b>Reset Settings</b> → Enter Administrator Code → Yes → Yes →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some default settings may not be restored.</li> </ul>
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	<p><b>Reset All</b> → Enter Administrator Code → Yes → Yes →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.)</li> <li>Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.</li> <li>Handset Code and Administrator Code return to the default settings.</li> </ul>

- A confirmation may appear before entering Administrator Code; end the current function to proceed.
- When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>17-2</b>
About USIM Card .....	17-2
USIM Card Installation.....	17-3
<b>Battery</b> .....	<b>17-4</b>
Battery Installation.....	17-4
<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>17-5</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>17-6</b>
<b>Key Assignments</b> .....	<b>17-8</b>
<b>Pager Codes</b> .....	<b>17-10</b>
Pager Code List.....	17-10
<b>Character Codes</b> .....	<b>17-11</b>
Character Code List.....	17-11

<b>Weather Indicators</b> .....	<b>17-17</b>
Weather Indicator List .....	17-17
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>17-18</b>
Memory Card Structure & Contents...	17-24
<b>Menu List</b> .....	<b>17-25</b>
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>17-33</b>
<b>Warranty &amp; Service</b> .....	<b>17-41</b>
<b>Customer Service</b> .....	<b>17-42</b>

# 17

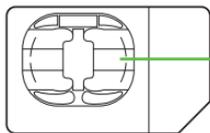
## Appendix



## About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

### Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

### Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42).

### USIM PIN

4-digit code (**9999** by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict usage.

#### PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

#### Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42) for your Personal Unlocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

**Enter PUK Code** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter new PIN** ➔ ● ➔ **Re-enter new PIN** ➔ ●

- Write down PUK code.

#### PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-42) for recovery.

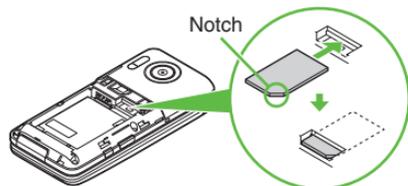


## USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

### Inserting

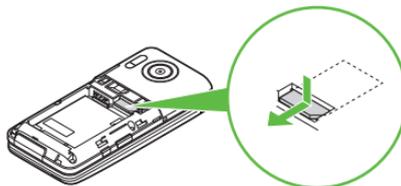
- 1 Remove battery (P.17-4)
- 2 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down



- Reinstall battery (P.17-4).

### Removing

- 1 Remove battery
- 2 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

### After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.



# Battery Installation

## About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

## Lithium-ion Battery

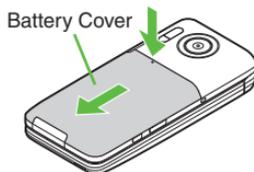
- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.
  - To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
  - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.



Li-ion00

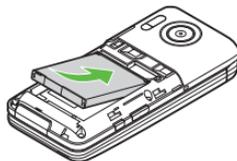
## Inserting & Removing

### 1 Remove cover



- Press and slide as shown.

### 2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

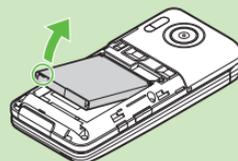
### 3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

## Removing

- Power handset off and lift battery as shown.



## Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

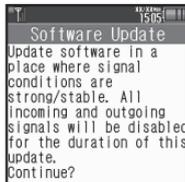
### Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

### Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔   
**Phone** ➔ **Software Update** ➔ 
- 2 **Software Update** ➔ 



- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Update Result

In , **Update Result** ➔ 

### Scheduled Update

A confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

### When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

### Update Result

While Information window appears,  
**Update Result** ➔ 

### Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, power handset off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.17-42).



# Troubleshooting

## ■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't power on	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.17-4).
Handset won't respond	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry <b>On</b> ?	If <b>On</b> , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card appears	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Power handset off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
<b>REFRESH</b> appears and handset returns to Standby	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active.	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.2-18).
	Function Lock may be active.	Cancel Function Lock (P.13-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging</b>	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
<b>Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset</b>	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.13-3).
<b>Handset/AC Charger feels warm</b>	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
<b>Cannot access Memory Card files</b>	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 943SH-formatted Memory Cards.
<b>Clock settings are lost</b>	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



**Charger/Battery**

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery charges quickly</b>	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
<b>Battery charges slowly</b>	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
<b>Battery won't charge</b>	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.17-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery Time seems shorter than usual</b>	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, SI Application, Media Player and camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



## Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 □ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpars7	7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー ・	ワヲンー ・ ・ _1	0	0	0
X	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List <sup>3</sup>				✕ + P (pause) ? - <sup>2</sup>
#	、。 # (line break) ? ! □ (space)		、 # (line break) ?! □ (space)	#	

<sup>1</sup> - is available only in Single-byte Katakana mode.

<sup>2</sup> Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

<sup>3</sup> May not be enterable in some windows.



Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion <sup>4</sup>	Cursor up/down; ¶ (line break) when  is pressed at the end of text			
	Cursor left/right				
	Cursor left/right				
	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Search Word <sup>5</sup>	_____			
 (Long)	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>5</sup>	_____	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>5,6</sup>	_____	
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)		_____	
	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion <sup>6</sup>	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with				
	Re-convert <sup>7</sup>	_____	Re-convert <sup>6,7</sup>	_____	
	OK				
	Non-Predictive suggestions <sup>5</sup>	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion <sup>5</sup>	_____			
 (Long)	Single Kanji Conversion <sup>5</sup>	_____			

<sup>4</sup>Cursor moves up/down except during conversion.

<sup>5</sup>Available during conversion.

<sup>6</sup>Available only in Single-byte Alphanumerics mode.

<sup>7</sup>Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.



# Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

## Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

## Single-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			*1
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ヰ	ヱ	6	7	8	9	0

## Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

## Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ヰ	ヱ					

\*1 Press   to insert  (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

\*2 Press   to toggle upper and lower case modes.



# Character Code List

First Three Digits		Last Digit								First Three Digits		Last Digit								First Three Digits		Last Digit																	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010										043	そ	た	だ	ち	つ	づ	て	で		080										171	迂	雨	卵	鶉	窺	丑	確	白	渦
011	↓	↑	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	ば	ば	081	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	172	唄	蔚	鶯	姥	既	浦	瓜	閨	樽	
012	∠	∟	∪	∩	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	045	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	ば	ば	082	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	173	云	運	雲							
013	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	046	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	ば	ば	083	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上	上											
014	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	047	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	ば	ば											173										
015	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	048	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	ば	ば											174	曳	米	永	泳	洩	益	駅	悦	謁	
016	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩										130										175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	馱	益	謁	
017	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	050	ア	ア	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	176	閱	榎	厭	厭	園	堰	奄	煙	延	
018	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	051	オ	オ	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	132	⑳	㉑	㉒	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	㉘	177	掩	援	液	演	演	炎	焰	煙	燕	
019	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	052	オ	オ	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	133	X	ミ	キ	キ	ル	ル	フ	フ	フ	178	艶	苑	園	遠	鉛	鴛	塹			
020	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	053	ソ	ソ	タ	タ	チ	チ	ツ	ツ	134	㉙	㉚	㉛	㉜	㉝	㉞	㉟	㊱	㊲											
021	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	054	ト	ト	ビ	ビ	ミ	ミ	ハ	ハ	135	km	mg	kg	cc	m <sup>3</sup>					178										
022	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	055	ト	ト	ビ	ビ	ミ	ミ	ハ	ハ	136							No.	KK	TEL	179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
023	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	056	ホ	ホ	ビ	ビ	ミ	ミ	ハ	ハ	137	㊳	㊴	㊵	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	180	押	旺	横	欧	毆	王	翁	襖	鶯	
024	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	057	ユ	ユ	ヨ	ヨ	ラ	ラ	レ	レ	138	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	181	鷗	黄	冲	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	桶	
026	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	058	ヱ	ヱ	ラ	ラ	ケ	ケ			139	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	㊿	182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	厩	音		
027	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	060	A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ											182										
028	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	061	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ	Ω	Π	P	160										183	飯	家	何	伽	科	暇	佳	加	嘉	
029	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	∪	∩	062	Υ	Φ	X	Ψ	α	β	γ	δ	161	垂	唾	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢	184	寡	寡	寡	寡	寡	寡	寡	寡	寡	
031										063									162	葵	梓	庄	輪	握	握	旭	鈴	綾	185	禍	蝦	課	嘩	貨	貨	貨	貨	貨	
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	163	鮎	或	粟	裕	安	庵	按	暗	案	186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	貨	貨	貨	貨	貨	
033										065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω		164	鞍	杏								187	我	会	画	牙	解	回	塊	塊	塊	
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	070	A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ	164										188	介	恢	懷	懷	拐	拐	拐	拐	拐	
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	071	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	165	威	尉	惟	慰	易	衣	請	為	畏	189	蟹	開	階	階	械	械	械	械	械	
036										072	T	Y	Φ	X	Ψ	α	β	γ	166	移	維	縉	胃	萎	一	壹	因	異	190	蟹	開	階	階	械	械	械	械	械	
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	073	B	Э	Ю	Я					167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壹	逸	191	蟹	開	階	階	械	械	械	械	械	
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	074									168	稻	茨	芋	鱒	允	印	咽	員	因	192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	鈹	鈹	鈹	
039	z									075	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					193	馨	蚌	垣	蚌	蚌	蚌	蚌	蚌	蚌	
040	あ	い	う	え	お					076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	170	院	陰	隱	韻	時					194	赫	披	格	郭	隔	覆	學	學	學	
041	お	か	き	く	け	こ				077	ф	х	ц	ш	щ	ы	ь	э											195	額	掛	笠	燈	襪	髭	靴	割	日	
042	こ	さ	し	す	せ	そ				078	ю	я																	196	額	掛	笠	燈	襪	髭	靴	割	日	
																													197	恰	活	渴	滑	葛	轄	轄	轄	轄	













## Weather Indicator List

### Basic Status

	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of

### Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

### Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall

### Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating

### Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

### Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

### Other

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification



## Specifications

### SoftBank 943SH

<b>Weight*</b>	138 g
<b>Continuous Talk Time*</b>	200 minutes (3G) 200 minutes (GSM)
<b>Continuous Standby Time*</b>	340 hours (3G) 300 hours (GSM) (closed position)
<b>Charging Time (power off)*</b>	AC Charger: 140 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)*</b>	51 x 112 x 17.5-18.6 mm (closed position, without protruding parts)
<b>Maximum Output</b>	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

\*Approximate value.

- Above values calculated with battery installed and Backlight Brightness set to **Level:2**.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in closed position without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to **Off**.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.

- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

### Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium/Deposition
Housing (Display back)	Aluminum/UV painting
Housing (rotation support side)	ABS resin & SUS/ Acrylic UV painting
Housing (Keypad side)	Nylon resin/Acrylic UV painting
Housing (battery side), Battery Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV painting
Display window	PC resin & acrylic resin
External Display window, Clear/Back Key, Start Key, Keypad, ✕ Key, Power On/Off Key, # Key	PC resin
Lens cover, Mobile Light cover	Acrylic resin
Camera ornament	PET & UV curing resin
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys)	Aluminum/Anodized aluminum
Center Key, Mail Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, TV & Text Key, Camera Key	PC resin/Acrylic UV painting

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Side Keys (Volume Up Key, Volume Down Key, Movie Menu Key)	PC resin & elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV painting
Memory Card Slot Cover, External Device Port Cover	Elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV painting
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Rotation stopper	Silicon rubber
Battery	PC resin & ABS resin
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH16A/Ni plating

### Accessory

#### Battery

<b>Voltage</b>	3.7V
<b>Battery Type</b>	Lithium-ion
<b>Capacity</b>	770 mAh
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)*</b>	35.4 x 46.3 x 4.6 mm (without protruding parts)

\*Approximate value.



## Basic Operations

## ■ Standby Shortcut

<b>Standby</b>	16 (shared with widgets) <sup>*</sup>
<b>Icon View</b>	100 (16 per page including widgets)

Excluding S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status, Pedometer and Household Accounts.

## Universal Operations, Etc.

## ■ Text Entry

<b>User Dictionary</b>	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
<b>Acquire Dictionary</b>	5 dictionaries
<b>Paste List</b>	10 text strings
<b>Recoverable Deleted Characters</b>	30,720 single-byte characters
<b>Dictionary</b>	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

## ■ Phone Book

<b>Entry</b>	1,000 entries
<b>Name/Reading</b>	Last/First: 32 characters each
<b>Phone Number</b>	5 numbers (32 digits each)
<b>Mail Address</b>	5 addresses (128 characters each)
<b>Category</b>	16 Categories
<b>Address</b>	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
<b>Office</b>	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
<b>Homepage</b>	1,024 bytes
<b>Note</b>	256 characters
<b>Mail Groups</b>	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

## Calling

<b>Call Log Records</b>	Dialed: 30 Dialed Ranking: 10 Received: 30
<b>Answer Phone/Record Caller Voice</b>	20 messages or 90 seconds
<b>Auto Answer List</b>	10 numbers
<b>Decoration Call</b>	100 KB including 20 characters
<b>Speed Dial/Mail</b>	100 numbers/addresses

## Messaging

<b>Memory</b>	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	5 MB (or 1,000 messages between Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages)
	Sent Messages	
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	220 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
<b>PC Mail/S! Mail Subject</b>	512 single-byte characters	
<b>PC Mail/S! Mail Message</b>	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
<b>SMS Message</b>	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
<b>Auto Resend</b>	2 times	
<b>Attachment</b>	20 files or 2 MB <sup>*</sup>	
<b>Send Reservation</b>	10 messages	
<b>Signature</b>	256 single-byte characters	
<b>Recipient</b>	20 numbers/addresses	

<b>Folder</b>	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
<b>Chat Folders</b>	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)
<b>Graphic Mail</b>	1 sound or Flash <sup>®</sup> file, or 40 images/My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash <sup>®</sup> file)	
<b>Auto Reply</b>	20 numbers/addresses Reply Message: 256 single-byte characters per mode	
<b>Sort Spam Mail</b>	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

<sup>\*</sup>Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

## ■ PC Mail Settings

<b>PC Mail Account</b>	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
<b>Set Receiving</b>	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
<b>Set Sending</b>	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
<b>PC Mail DL</b>	Individual Address	20 addresses



## Internet

Download (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page
		10 MB (100 MB via Keitai Wi-Fi) for progressive downloads
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
Download (Direct Browser) <sup>1</sup>	JPEG Images	5,000 KB
	Flash <sup>®</sup> Files	2 MB
History	300 pages for Yahoo! Keitai 300 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks <sup>2</sup> & Saved Pages	100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai 100 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	20 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (60 KB per entry)	

<sup>1</sup> 1 MB each for files other than JPEG images and Flash<sup>®</sup> files. (Some media files are playable beyond 1 MB.)

<sup>2</sup> Folders are counted as pages.

## Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
Recording Time (example)	Handset	Approximately 70 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)	
Split File	99 portions per file	
Time Shift Recording	30 minutes	
Reservation List	5 entries (24 hours each on 1 GB or larger Memory Card)	

## Camera &amp; Imaging

## Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	8 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

## Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 20.4x	
	8M	2448 x 3264
	5M	1944 x 2592
	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
Picture Size; Portrait (W x H dots)	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	QVGA	240 x 320
	3M	2048 x 1536
	Full HD	1920 x 1080
Picture Size; Landscape (W x H dots)	Wallpaper	854 x 480
	VGA	640 x 480
	QVGA	320 x 240
	Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960
File Format	JPEG	

Memory	Approximately 80 files (at 8M, High Quality) on handset with no other files
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm
Background Save	3 files
Portrait Auto Focus	VGA or larger

## Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.1x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	864 x 480 (Wide)
		640 x 480 (VGA)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
	For Message	176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
	320 x 240 (QVGA)	
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	
	128 x 96 (SubQCIF)	

File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	2 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Still Image Capture	3 images	
Recording Pause Supported	QVGA or larger (Extended Video sizes only)	

\*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.



## ■ Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854) Power On/Off (480 x 854) Incoming Call (320 x 320) Alarm (480 x 208) Mail Art (96 x 96) VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
Composite	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

## Video & Music

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
All Music List	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta® WMA	
	SD AUDIO	Shows up to 999 files

## S! Applications & Widgets

### ■ S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 220 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
Remote Control	Approximately 5 m

### ■ Mobile Widget

Standby	6 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, Pedometer: 1, Household Accounts: 1, others: 3)
Icon View (40 pages)	Handset widgets: 100 Memory Card widgets: 100 (16 per page including Standby Shortcuts)

## Handy Extras

### ■ PIM/Life

Calendar <sup>1</sup> / Tasks	Schedule: 1,000 entries Tasks: 300 entries Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays	
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters	
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off	Approximately 30 minutes
Household Accounts	3,285 entries <sup>2</sup> (9,999,999 yen each)	
Calculator	999,999,999,999	
Expenses Memo	50 entries (999,999.99 yen each) per list x 3 lists	
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumeric	

<sup>1</sup> Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar  
as of December 2009.

<sup>2</sup> Limit may be lower depending on the number of  
items in each entry.

### ■ Clock/Gauge

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

Pedometer	Today's Step Count	Steps: 99,999	
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 71.9 Ex Calories: 9,999.9 kcal Distance: 179.9 km Fat burned: 999.9 g	
	Log	2 years	
		Hourly view: 9,999 steps per hour Daily view: 99,999 steps per day All Days: 999 days Steps: 99,999,999 Time: 99,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 99,999.9 Ex Calories: 9,999,999.9 kcal Distance: 999,999.9 km Fat burned: 999,999.9 g	
	Accumulated Data	Steps: 99,999	
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 71.9 Ex Calories: 9,999.9 kcal Distance: 179.9 km Fat burned: 999.9 g	
	Average	Steps: 99,999	
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 71.9 Ex Calories: 9,999.9 kcal Distance: 179.9 km Fat burned: 999.9 g	
	S! GPS Navi	My Location	50 entries



## Specifications

### ■ Doc./Rec.

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries	(8,192 characters each)
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 20 minutes (message size limit: 2 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumeric or 131 kanji	
Scan Text	256 characters	

### Entertainment

#### ■ S! Quick News

Savable Items	1 item for Special 5 items between News Flash and General
---------------	--

#### ■ e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters
-----------	---------------

#### ■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters
	Comment: 15 characters
	Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

#### ■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

### ■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Title	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser & Direct Browser)	URL for Posting	1,024 characters
	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

### Data Folder

Memory	220 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
--------	--

### Memory Card

Backup File Name	'yymmddXX' (XX: 2 digits/letters)
------------------	-----------------------------------

'yymmdd' for Contents Keys.

### Connectivity & File Backup

#### ■ Wi-Fi

Profile	10 entries
Authentication Method	Open System, Shared Key, WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA/WPA2-PSK Auto
Encryption Method	No Authentication, WEP, TKIP, AES, TKIP/AES Auto
WEP Key	4 keys

### ■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
Range	Within 20 cm	
IrSS Transfer (JPEG images)	Receive 2,500 KB or less; send 5,000 KB or less (after resizing)	

### ■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.1
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile
	Hands-Free Profile
	Dial-Up Networking Profile
	Object Push Profile
	File Transfer Profile
Basic Imaging Profile	Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
	Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

### ■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 synchronization records
-----	----------------------------

### Network

Add Network	5 Networks
	Country/Network code: 3 digits
	Name: 25 single-byte characters



## Reference URLs

- **SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**  
<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>
- **S! Addressbook Back-up**  
[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)
- **Messaging Basics**  
[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/mail.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html)
- **Custom Handset Address**  
<https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html>
- **Yahoo! Keitai**  
[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/web.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html)
- **Ichi Navi**  
[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)
- **Secure Remote Lock**  
[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)
- **microSD Memory Card Compatibility**  
From PC (Japanese)  
[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd\\_support.html](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html)  
From Handset (Japanese)  
<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>
- **Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders**  
From PC (Japanese)  
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/bd/spec/index.html>
- **SVG-T**  
From Handset (Japanese)  
[http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index\\_pdc.html](http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html)
- **Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting**  
From PC  
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>  
From Handset (Japanese)  
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>
- **SOFTBANK TELECOM Corp. (BB mobilepoint)**  
From PC  
<http://tm.softbank.jp/english/consumer/wlan/index.html>



## Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure			Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)	
DCIM	XXXSHARP		Still images in DCIM	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents	SD Local Contents	
		Mail	Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)	
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI	Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	SI Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
		Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)	
		Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)	
WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)			
	SH_Folder	Application management files		
	Utility	Backup files (Phone Book), etc.		
	SHARP	MOBILE	Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.	
		SD_AUDIO	SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)	



# Menu List

## Messaging

Function	Refer to	
Received Msg.	P.5-14	
Create Message	P.5-4	
Retrieve New Msg.	P.5-26	
Drafts	P.5-32	
Templates	P.5-8	
Sent Messages	P.5-14	
Unsent Messages	P.5-32	
Chat Folder	P.5-17	
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.5-26
	Retrieve All	P.5-26
	Delete All	P.5-30
	Mailbox Volume	P.5-32
Create New SMS	P.5-9	
Settings	Address Settings	P.5-3
	General Settings	P.5-33
	S! Mail Settings	P.5-35
	PC Mail Settings	P.5-20
	SMS Settings	P.5-37
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.5-22
Mail Groups	P.5-18	
Memory Status	P.5-29	

## Settings: General Settings

	Function	Refer to	
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.5-33	
	Reply to Settings	P.5-33	
	Reply With Text	P.5-33	
	Auto Reply	P.5-28	
	Set Quick Reply	P.5-28	
	Auto Resend	P.5-33	
	Sending Status	P.5-33	
	Restrictions Setting	P.5-10	
	Receive	Message Notice	P.5-34
		Link to Feeling	P.5-34
Animation View		P.5-34	
Sort Spam Mail	P.5-16		
Report Spam	P.5-33		
Scroll Unit	P.5-33		
Message List View	P.5-33		
Address View	P.5-33		
Received Msg. View	P.5-33		
Sent Msg. View	P.5-33		
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.5-33	
	Sent Messages	P.5-33	
Display Rotation	P.5-28		

## Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function	Refer to	
Message DL	P.5-13	
Signature	P.5-22	
Picture Appearance	P.5-35	
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.5-35
	Sounds	P.5-35
Create Msg. Size	P.5-35	
Send File Settings	P.5-35	
Picture Auto Resize	P.5-35	

## Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.5-20
PC Mail DL	P.5-36
Check New Mail	P.5-36
Word wrap	P.5-36

## Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.5-37
Message Center	P.5-37
Char-code	P.5-37



## Yahoo!

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Menu List	P.6-3
Bookmarks	P.6-8
Saved Pages	P.6-8
Web Search	P.6-11
Enter URL	P.6-4
History	P.6-4
PC Site Browser	P.6-5
Direct Browser	P.6-5
Browser Settings	P.6-12

## ■ PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-8
Saved Pages	P.6-8
Web Search	P.6-11
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-9
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Direct Browser	P.6-5

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.6-12
Scroll Settings	P.6-13
Cursor Settings	P.6-12
Downloads	P.6-12
Memory Operation	P.6-10
Security Settings	P.6-17
Download to	P.6-12
Initialized Browser	P.6-17
Reset Settings	P.6-17
Warning Message	P.6-13
Zoom Factor	P.6-12
Softkey Area	P.6-12

PC Site  
Browser  
Settings

## ■ Direct Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-8
Saved Pages	P.6-8
Web Search	P.6-11
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-9
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
PC Site Browser	P.6-5

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.6-12
Scroll Settings	P.6-13
Cursor Settings	P.6-12
Downloads	P.6-12
Memory Operation	P.6-10
Security Settings	P.6-17
Download to	P.6-12
Initialized Browser	P.6-17
Reset Settings	P.6-17
Zoom Factor	P.6-12
Softkey Area	P.6-12
Direct Browser Lock	P.6-13
Proxy Setting	P.6-13
Homepage Settings	P.6-13
Search Page	P.6-13

Set Direct  
Browser

## ■ Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.6-12
Scroll Unit	P.6-13
Cursor Settings	P.6-12
Downloads	P.6-12
Memory Operation	P.6-10
Security Settings	P.6-17
Download to	P.6-12
Initialized Browser	P.6-17
Reset Settings	P.6-17



## S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.10-2
Osaifu-Keitai	P.11-19
Notification History	P.10-2
Settings	P.10-7
Information	P.10-7

## Settings

Function	Refer to	
Application Volume	P.10-6	
Backlight	P.10-7	
Vibration	P.10-7	
Synchronization	P.10-7	
Notification Setting	P.10-7	
Calls & Alarms	P.10-6	
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.10-6
	Activation Time	P.10-6
	Stop Auto Start	P.10-6
Surround	P.10-6	
Set to Default	P.10-7	
Memory All Clear	P.10-7	

## Entertainment

Function	Refer to	
S! Information Channel/Weather	What's New	P.12-3
	Back Issue	P.12-3
	Registration/Cancel	P.12-3
	Get Latest Contents	P.12-14
	Notification	P.12-14
Weather Indicator	P.12-3	
S! Quick News	P.12-2	
Free Contents	Tada-Melody	P.12-4
	Tada-Deco	P.12-4
	Tada-Hon	P.12-4
	Tada-Komi	P.12-4
	Tada-Game	P.12-4
Tada-Utaban	P.12-4	
S! Contents Store	P.12-4	
Media Player	Music	P.9-5
	Videos	P.9-6
	Streaming	P.6-4
	MTP Mode	P.9-4
S! Friend's Status	P.12-6	
S! Circle Talk	P.12-9	
Near chat	P.12-11	
Blog Tool	P.12-12	
Digital Media Viewer	P.12-5	
BookSurfing	P.12-5	
e-Book Viewer	P.12-5	

S! Information Channel/Weather:  
Weather Indicator

Function	Refer to	
Weather	P.12-15	
Manual Update	P.12-3	
Settings	Standby Setting	P.12-15
	Weather Notif.	P.12-15
	Icon Update	P.12-15

## S! Quick News

Function	Refer to	
S! Quick News List	P.12-2	
Settings	Automatic Update	P.12-14
	Show Image	P.12-14
	Check Schedule	P.12-14
	Change Skin	P.12-14
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.12-14

## Media Player: Music

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Music	P.9-8	
My Music	P.9-5	
SD AUDIO	P.9-5	
WMA	P.9-5	
Download Music	P.9-4	
Settings	Sound Effects	P.9-8
	Playback Mode	P.9-8
	ⓂSound Output	P.9-8
	Delete All WMA	P.9-10



### Media Player: Videos

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Video	P.9-8	
My Videos	P.9-6	
Recorder Contents	P.9-6	
SD VIDEO	P.9-6	
Download Videos	P.9-4	
Settings	Playback Mode	P.9-8
	Backlight	P.9-8
	Display Size	P.9-8
	Sound Effects	P.9-8
	Web Link Setting	P.9-8
	Sound Output	P.9-8

### Camera

Function	Refer to
Easy Auto Camera	P.8-5
Pro Auto Camera	P.8-3
Quick Camera	P.8-3
Fine Video Camera	P.8-4
Video Camera for Mail	P.8-16
Various Cameras	P.8-8
Album	P.8-18
Scan Barcode	P.11-38
Scan Card	P.11-40
Scan Receipt	P.11-14
Kanji Grabber	P.11-42
Review	P.8-21
Set Camera Key	P.8-27

### Photo Camera (Example: Pro Auto Camera)

Function	Refer to	
Switch Camera	P.8-8	
Detect Personal	P.8-14	
Self-timer	P.8-27	
Picture Size	P.8-27	
Focus Setting	P.8-27	
Shutter Settings	Egao level	P.8-28
	Shutter Mode	P.8-28
	Shutter Sound	P.8-28
	Set Remote Shutter	P.8-27
Settings	Picture Quality	P.8-28
	ISO Sensitivity	P.8-28
	White Balance	P.8-28
	Exposure	P.8-28
	Shake Reducing	P.8-28
	Long Exposure	P.8-28
	Display Setting	P.8-28
Set Send Key	P.8-28	
Album	P.8-18	
Save Settings	Save Pictures to	P.8-28
	Auto Save	P.8-28
	Background Save	P.8-28
Scene	P.8-10	
Help	P.8-27	
Mobile Light	P.8-28	

### Video Camera

Function	Refer to	
Switch Camera	P.8-8	
Simple Setting	P.8-16	
Self-timer	P.8-30	
Record Time/Size	P.8-30	
Focus Setting	P.8-30	
Shake Reducing	P.8-30	
Settings	Video Quality	P.8-30
	Exposure	P.8-30
	Microphone	P.8-30
Review	P.8-21	
Save Settings	Save Videos to	P.8-30
	Auto Save	P.8-30
	Video Encode	P.8-30
	Audio Encode	P.8-30
	Picture Setting	P.8-30
Display Size	P.8-30	
Help	P.8-30	
Mobile Light	P.8-30	

### Videos/Music

Function	Refer to
Videos/Music	P.9-2



## Tools

## ■ PIM/Life

Function	Refer to	
Calendar	P.11-2	
Exchange Profile	P.15-10	
Alarms	P.11-8	
Wakeup TV	P.11-10	
Relaxation Time	P.11-12	
Tasks	P.11-6	
Household Accounts	P.11-13	
Calculator	P.11-17	
Expenses Memo	P.11-18	
Osaifu-Keitai	P.11-19	
Simulated Call	Receive Simulated Call	P.11-48
	Switch On/Off	P.11-23
	Set Caller	P.11-23
	Assign Tone	P.11-23
	Receive Timing	P.11-23
	For Silent Mode	P.11-49

## ■ PIM/Life: Osaifu-Keitai

Function	Refer to	
Lifestyle-Appli	P.11-19	
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	P.11-48
	IC Card Lock	P.11-20
	Remote Lock	P.11-21
	Interface Settings	P.11-48
	Balance Info	P.11-48
	Set to Default	P.11-48

## ■ Clock/Gauge

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.11-24
Countdown Timer	P.11-25
World Clock	P.11-26
Hour Minder	P.11-27
Pedometer	P.11-28
Compass	P.11-30
SI GPS Navi	P.11-31
Battery Meter	P.2-18

## ■ Doc./Rec.

Function	Refer to	
Dictionary	P.3-12	
Search	P.3-15	
Document Viewer	P.11-34	
Notepad	P.11-35	
Scratch Pad	P.3-16	
ASCII Art	P.11-36	
Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.11-51
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.11-37
	Save Recording to	P.11-51
Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode	P.11-38
	Open Barcode	P.11-52
	Create QR Code	P.11-39
	Scan Card	P.11-40
	Scan Receipt	P.11-14
	Kanji Grabber	P.11-42
Phone Help	Scan Text	P.11-41
	Scanned Results	P.11-52
Phone Help	P.2-18	

## ■ Connectivity

Function	Refer to	
Wi-Fi	P.15-2	
Bluetooth	P.15-13	
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.15-24
	Send All	P.15-9
	IrSS Key Setting	P.15-24
IC Transmission	1 File Reception	P.15-24
	Send All	P.15-12
USB Mode	Mass Storage	P.15-17
	Recorder Link	P.15-17
	MTP Mode	P.9-4
USB Charge	P.1-12	
Memory Card	P.14-6	
Backup/Restore	P.15-26	

## ■ Connectivity: Wi-Fi

Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.15-23
Create Profile	P.15-3
Profile List	P.15-23
Common Settings	P.15-23
Connect Information	P.15-23
Show MAC Address	P.15-23

## ■ Connectivity: Bluetooth

Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.15-25
Add Device	P.15-14
Paired Devices	P.15-15
Send All	P.15-16
Setting Watch	P.15-25
My Device Settings	P.15-24
My Device Details	P.15-25



## Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.8-22
DCIM	P.14-2
Ring Songs-Tones	P.11-37
S! Appli	P.10-2
Widget	P.10-3
Music	P.14-2
Videos	P.14-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.11-19
Books	P.14-2
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Status Templates	P.14-2
Decoration Call	P.4-16
Flash@	P.14-2
Other Documents	P.14-2
Memory Status	P.14-2

## Widget

Function	Refer to	
Widget Store	P.10-4	
Widget Contents	P.10-4	
Widget History	P.10-8	
Settings	Remove Contents	P.10-4
	Auto Refresh	P.10-9
	AutoConnect Abroad	P.10-9
	Set Use Abroad	P.10-9
	Notification Setting	P.10-9
	Cookies	P.10-9
	Delete Cookies	P.10-9

## TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.7-5
TV Player	P.7-9
TV-Image Folder	P.7-6
TV Link	P.7-15
TV Listing	P.7-7
Familink Remote	P.1-3
Reservation List	P.7-11
Settings	P.7-14
Recorder Contents	P.7-17

## Settings

Function	Refer to	
TV Alarm	P.7-18	
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.7-16
	Image Location	P.7-16
	Notify Connection	P.7-15
	Location	P.7-15
	Manufacture Number	P.7-15
Delete StationData	P.7-15	
Screen Size(Portrait)	P.7-13	
Screen Size(Landscape)	P.7-13	
Set	Display Icon	P.7-14
Landscape	Magnify Area	P.7-14
Sound Output		P.7-14
ⓄSound Output		P.7-14
Set Call Time Shift		P.7-16
Calls & Alarms		P.7-14
TV Reserve Prior		P.7-18
Save Recording to		P.7-16

Function	Refer to	
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.7-14
	Close Action	P.7-14
Smooth Mode	P.7-13	
Set Two Screen	P.7-15	

## Phone

Function	Refer to	
Phone Book	P.3-17	
Add New Entry	P.3-17	
Information	P.1-7	
Call Log	P.4-8	
Play Messages	P.4-4	
Call Voicemail	P.4-13	
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.15-20	
My Details	P.2-18	
Set Category	P.3-18	
Mail Groups	P.5-18	
Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-7	
Touch-Tone Signal List	P.4-21	
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.3-19
	Select Phone Book	P.3-24
	Save New Entry	P.3-24
	New Number Prompt	P.3-22
	Vertical Display	P.3-22
	Horizontal Display	P.3-22
Call Log Setting	P.4-18	
Manage Entries	Copy All	P.3-24
	Memory Status	P.3-24
	Change Mode(All)	P.3-24
	Delete All	P.3-24



## Settings

## ■ Sound/Display

Function	Refer to
Mode Settings	P.2-24
Display	P.16-3
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Sounds & Alerts	P.3-5
Date & Time	P.16-2
言語選択 (Language)	P.16-3
Ringer Output	P.16-6
Earpiece Volume	P.4-15
Change Menu	P.2-5

## ■ Sound/Display: Display

Function	Refer to	
Wallpaper	P.3-3	
System Graphics	P.16-3	
VeilView	P.2-25	
Display Effects	P.16-3	
Font Settings	P.3-2	
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.16-4
	Show Widget	P.16-4
	Show Operator Name	P.16-4
Vivid Mode	P.16-3	
Mini Battery	P.2-25	
Greeting Message	P.16-3	
External Display	P.1-12	
Backlight	P.16-3	
Display Saving	P.16-3	
Dial Number	P.16-3	

## ■ Sound/Display: Sounds &amp; Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.16-5
Ringtone/videos	P.3-5
Machi-Uta	P.3-20
System Sounds	P.16-6
Vibration	P.3-5
Event Light	P.16-5
Set Key Illumi	P.16-4
Status Light	P.16-5
Any Key Answer	P.16-5
Surround	P.16-6

## ■ Sound/Display: Date &amp; Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.16-2
Time Correction	P.16-2
Daylight Saving	P.16-2
Set Time Zone	P.16-2
Clock/Calendar	P.16-4
World Clock	P.11-26
Alarms	P.11-8
Set Holiday	P.11-43
Time Format	P.16-2
Date Format	P.16-2
Calendar Format	P.16-2

## ■ Phone/

Function	Refer to	
User Dictionary	P.3-11	
Set Key Shortcut	P.2-9	
Display Rotation	Rotate 90° to	P.2-13
	Rotate Back to	P.4-20
Motion Control	P.2-15	
Vector Pad Settings	Scroll Speed	P.2-22
	Launch Spinguru Menu by	P.2-22
	Jog Speed	P.2-22
	Correct Vector Pad	P.2-22
Set Key Light	P.16-4	
Double Number	Switch On/Off	P.2-19
	Double Mode	P.2-21
	Password Entry	P.2-25
	Mode Name	P.2-25
	Reject By Line	P.2-25
	Show Missed	P.2-25
	Packet Warning	P.2-25
Send Priority	P.2-25	
Video/Music Menu Updates	P.9-2	
Memory Card	P.14-6	
Backup/Restore	Backup All Items	P.15-26
	Backup Selected Items	P.15-19
	Restore All Items	P.15-26
	Restore Selected Items	P.15-19
	Settings/Manage	P.15-26
Locks	P.13-2	
Software Update	P.17-5	
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.16-8
	Reset All	P.16-8



### Phone/☎: Memory Card

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.8-26
	Settings	P.8-32
	Check Settings	P.8-26
	Reset Settings	P.8-32
SD Local Contents		P.14-9
Format Card		P.14-6
Memory Status		P.14-2

### Phone/☎: Locks

Function		Refer to
PIN Entry		P.13-2
Function Lock		P.13-2
IP Service Setting		P.16-7
Function Control		P.13-4
Application Lock		P.13-3
History Lock		P.13-3
Show Secret Data		P.13-3
Set Lock Message		P.13-5
Chg. Handset Code		P.2-17
Administrator Setting		P.2-17

### Call

Function		Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.4-9
	Data Counter	P.4-18
	Call Time Counter	P.4-18
	Minute Minder	P.4-18
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.4-4
	Answer Time	P.4-14
	Outgoing Message	P.4-14
	Volume	P.4-14
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.4-13
	Diverts	P.4-12
	Cancel All	P.4-13
	Status	P.4-19
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.4-21
	Incoming Picture	P.4-21
	Outgoing Picture	P.4-21
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.4-21
	Backlight	P.4-21
	Loudspeaker	P.4-21
	Mute Microphone	P.4-21
Remote Monitor	P.4-14	
Show My Number		P.4-20
 Missed Calls		P.4-13
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.4-15
	Country Codes	P.4-15
	Roaming Dial Assistant	P.4-15
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.4-20
	Restrict Destinations	P.4-10
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.4-20
	Reject Numbers	P.4-19
	Change NW Password	P.4-20

Function		Refer to
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.4-17
	Play in Receiving	P.4-17
	Notice	P.4-17
Auto Answer		P.4-21
Call Waiting		P.4-19

### Network

Function		Refer to
Select Network		P.16-7
Select Service		P.16-7
Re-search Signal		P.16-7
Offline Mode		P.2-16
Retrieve NW Info		P.16-7
Network Info		P.16-7
Wi-Fi		P.15-3
External Device		P.16-7



## Index

## A

AC Charger.....	1-4
Accessing Functions .....	2-3
Accessory .....	v
Administrator Code .....	2-17
After-Sales Services .....	17-41
Alarms .....	11-8
Canceling .....	11-9
Deleting .....	11-9
Editing entries .....	11-46
For Manner Mode.....	11-46
Link to World Clk.....	11-46
Album.....	8-18
Animation View .....	5-11
Answer Phone.....	4-4, 4-14
Any Key Answer .....	16-5
AOSS™ .....	15-3
Application Lock.....	13-3
ASCII Art.....	11-36
Auto Art .....	5-4
Auto Reply.....	5-12, 5-28
Auto Resend.....	5-2, 5-33
Auto Retry Function .....	5-2

## B

Backlight.....	16-3
Backup.....	15-18, 15-26
Bar Incoming Calls .....	4-20
Bar Outgoing Calls .....	4-20
Battery .....	1-4, 17-4
Battery Cover .....	1-2
Battery Meter.....	2-18
Blog Tool .....	12-12, 12-17
Bluetooth® .....	15-13
Blu-ray Disc recorders... ..	7-17, 9-6, 9-11, 15-17
Bookmarks .....	6-8

BookSurfing® .....	12-5
--------------------	------

## C

Calculator .....	11-17, 11-47
Calendar .....	11-2
Calendar Settings.....	11-43
Editing schedules .....	11-44
Call Barring .....	4-12, 4-20
Call Forwarding.....	4-12
Call Log.....	4-8, 4-17
Call Time Counter .....	4-18
Call Waiting .....	4-12, 4-19
Call Waiting (answering Line 2).....	4-19
Caller ID .....	4-12, 4-20
Camera.....	8-2
Album.....	8-18
Capturing Still Images .....	8-5
Changing/saving camera settings .....	8-11
Detect Personal.....	8-14
Photo Camera settings.....	8-27
Recording Video.....	8-16
Review .....	8-21
Center Access Code.....	2-17
Change NW Password.....	4-20
Change PIN.....	13-5
Character Code List.....	17-11
Charging .....	1-4
Charging Terminals .....	1-2
Chat Folder .....	5-17, 5-31
Clock/Calendar.....	16-4
Closed Position .....	1-2
Compass.....	11-30
Composite .....	8-25
Countdown Timer .....	11-25
Create QR Code .....	11-39
Customer Service .....	17-42
Customized Screen (Japanese).....	3-4
Cycloid Position.....	1-2

## D

Data Broadcast (Japanese).....	7-6
Change View (Data) .....	7-15
Returning to initial window .....	7-15
Set Recording .....	7-16
Data Counter .....	4-18
Data Folder .....	14-2
Files (attaching).....	5-5, 14-3
Files (moving/copying) .....	14-4
Files (opening) .....	14-3
Files (renaming) .....	14-8
Folders (adding) .....	14-4
Selecting Multiple Files .....	14-4
Set Secret (folders) .....	14-4
Slide Show .....	14-3
Date & Time .....	16-2
Daylight Saving .....	11-26, 16-2
Decoration Call .....	4-6, 4-16
Delivery Report .....	5-11, 5-23, 5-33
Dialing from Call Log records.....	4-17
Dictionary .....	3-12
Digital Media Viewer .....	12-5
Digital TV (→ TV) .....	7-2
Adding Reception Areas .....	7-4
Area Setup .....	7-4
Auto Exit .....	7-14
AV Settings.....	7-13
Calls & Alarms.....	7-14
Change Area .....	7-13
Program Info. Search .....	7-13
Screen Size.....	7-13
Set Channels.....	7-4, 7-13
Set Two Screen .....	7-15
Smooth Mode .....	7-13
Sound Output .....	7-14
Sound Output .....	7-14
Subtitle/Sound .....	7-16



Display .....	1-2, 1-7
Display (settings) .....	16-3
Display Effects .....	16-3
Display Positions .....	1-2
Display Saving .....	16-3
Document Viewer .....	11-34
Double Number .....	2-19, 2-25
Download Dictionary .....	3-11
DPOF .....	8-26
Add Date .....	8-32
Check Settings .....	8-26
For All Pictures .....	8-26
Index Print .....	8-32
Dual Mode .....	2-21

## E

Earpiece .....	1-2
Earpiece Volume .....	4-15
e-Book Library .....	12-15
e-Book Viewer .....	12-5
e-Books (Japanese) .....	12-5, 12-15
Emergency Calls .....	4-2
English .....	16-3
Exchange Profile .....	15-10
Expenses Memo .....	11-18
External Device Connection .....	15-17
External Device Port .....	1-2
External Display .....	1-2, 1-11

## F

Face Arrange .....	8-24
Feeling Mail (receiving) .....	5-11
Feeling Mail (sending) .....	5-5
Focus (locking) .....	8-7
Focus Setting .....	8-27, 8-30
Font Size .....	3-2
Format Card .....	14-6
Function Control .....	13-4
Function Lock .....	13-2

## G

General Notes .....	xii
Graphic Mail .....	5-6
Group Calling .....	4-12, 4-19
Group Calling (opening another line) .....	4-19
Guide Usage Notes .....	ii

## H

Handset Code .....	2-17
Handset Keys .....	1-3
Handset mail address .....	5-3
Handset Parts .....	1-2
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6
Handset responses .....	3-5
Headphones (answering calls) .....	4-14
History Lock .....	13-3
Hold .....	4-14
Hour Minder .....	11-27
Assign Tone/Video .....	11-49
For Manner Mode .....	11-49
Link to World Clk .....	11-49
Vibration .....	11-49
Household Accounts .....	11-13

## I

IC Card Lock .....	11-20
IC Card Settings .....	11-20
IC Transmission .....	15-11
Ichi Navi .....	11-33
Icon View .....	2-12
Indicators .....	1-9
Camera (Viewfinder) .....	8-6, 8-17
Display .....	1-9
External Display .....	1-11
Messaging (message list) .....	5-12
Music Playback Window .....	9-5
SI Quick News .....	12-2
Video Playback Window .....	9-6
Information window .....	1-7

Infrared .....	15-7
Receiving files .....	15-8
Sending files .....	15-9, 15-24
Infrared Port .....	1-2
Internal Antenna .....	1-2
International calls .....	4-3, 4-15
Internet .....	6-2
Accessing .....	6-3, 6-5
Basic Operations .....	6-6
Browser Settings .....	6-12
Enter URL .....	6-4, 6-5
History .....	6-4, 6-5
Saving Bookmarks/pages .....	6-8
Int'l Call .....	4-4
IP Service Setting .....	16-7
IrSS Transfer .....	15-7

## K

Kanji Grabber .....	11-42
Key Assignments .....	17-8
Keypad Lock .....	2-18

## L

Language .....	16-3
Large Font Menu .....	3-2
Light Sensor .....	1-2, 16-3
Link to Feeling .....	5-34
Link to World Clk .....	11-46, 11-49
Locks .....	2-17, 13-2
Loudspeaker .....	4-15, 4-21, 12-17

## M

Machi-Uta® .....	3-5
Mail Groups .....	5-18
Changing members .....	5-31
Deleting .....	5-31
Edit Name .....	5-31
Main Menu .....	2-4
Manner mode .....	2-16
Mass Storage .....	15-17



- Master Reset** ..... 16-8  
 Format Card ..... 14-6  
 Reset All ..... 16-8  
 Reset Settings ..... 16-8
- Media Player** ..... 9-3  
 Delete All WMA ..... 9-10  
 Playlists ..... 9-7, 9-9, 9-10
- Memory All Clear (S! Applications)** ..... 10-7
- Memory Card** ..... 14-5  
 Format Card ..... 14-6  
 Opening files ..... 14-6
- Memory Card Structure & Contents** ..... 17-24
- Menu List** ..... 17-25  
 Camera ..... 17-28  
 Data Folder ..... 17-30  
 Entertainment ..... 17-27  
 Messaging ..... 17-25  
 Phone ..... 17-30  
 S! Appli ..... 17-27  
 Settings ..... 17-31  
 Tools ..... 17-29  
 TV ..... 17-30  
 Videos/Music ..... 17-28  
 Widget ..... 17-30  
 Yahoo! ..... 17-26
- Menu Operations** ..... 2-4
- Message List View** ..... 5-33
- Message Notice** ..... 5-34
- Messages (creating/sending)** ... 5-4, 5-9, 5-21  
 Attachments ..... 5-24  
 Graphic Mail ..... 5-6  
 Inserting signature manually ..... 5-22  
 Messaging Settings ..... 5-23  
 Preview Message ..... 5-4  
 Recipient status ..... 5-22  
 Recipients (editing) ..... 5-22  
 Save to Drafts ..... 5-23  
 Send Reservation ..... 5-23  
 Sending from Drafts ..... 5-32  
 Sending unsent messages ..... 5-32
- Set Auto Play File ..... 5-24  
 Set Sent Cancel ..... 5-23  
 Signature ..... 5-22  
 Speed Dial/Mail ..... 5-22  
 Templates ..... 5-8  
 Using sent messages ..... 5-32
- Messages (deleting)** ..... 5-21, 5-29  
 Auto Delete ..... 5-33
- Messages (forwarding)** ..... 5-32
- Messages (protecting)** ..... 5-14
- Messages (receiving/checking)** ..... 5-11  
 Accessing new mail out of Standby ..... 5-26  
 DL Size Limit ..... 5-35  
 Mail List ..... 5-26  
 Message List ..... 5-12, 5-29  
 Message Window ..... 5-12, 5-26  
 Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually ..... 5-13  
 Retrieving PC Mail ..... 5-21, 5-36  
 Save to Data Folder ..... 5-26
- Messages (sorting)** ..... 5-16  
 Sort Spam Mail ..... 5-16, 5-31
- Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail)** ..... 5-2  
 General Settings ..... 5-33  
 PC Mail Settings ..... 5-36  
 Receive (settings) ..... 5-34  
 S! Mail Settings ..... 5-35  
 Send/Compose (settings) ..... 5-33  
 SMS Settings ..... 5-37
- Microphone** ..... 1-2
- Minute Minder** ..... 4-18
- Missed Call Notification** ..... 4-13
- Mobile Light** ..... 1-2
- Mobile Widget** ..... 10-3
- Mode Settings** ..... 2-24
- Motion Control** ..... 2-14
- Movie Menu** ..... 2-9
- MTP Mode** ..... 9-4
- Multi Job** ..... 2-10
- Music (deleting)** ..... 9-9, 9-10
- Music (downloading)** ..... 9-4
- Music (playing)** ..... 9-5, 9-8
- My Details** ..... 2-18  
 Sending via Bluetooth® ..... 15-26  
 Sending via IC Transmission ..... 15-24  
 Sending via Infrared ..... 15-24
- N**
- Navi Appli** ..... 11-31
- Near Chat (Japanese)** ..... 12-11
- Network Password** ..... 2-17
- Notepad** ..... 11-35  
 Change Category ..... 11-51  
 Edit Text ..... 11-51
- O**
- Offline Mode** ..... 2-16
- Optional Services** ..... 4-12
- Optional Services (checking status)** ..... 4-19
- Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)** ..... 11-19  
 Balance Info ..... 11-48  
 IC Card Settings ..... 11-20  
 Locking ..... 11-20  
 Set to Default ..... 11-48
- P**
- Pager Code List** ..... 17-10
- PC (connecting handset)** ..... 15-17
- PC Mail** ..... 5-2, 5-19
- PC Mail (sending)** ..... 5-21
- PC Site Browser** ..... 6-5
- Pedometer** ..... 11-28
- Pen Light** ..... 2-18
- Personal Mode** ..... 3-7, 3-21
- Phone Book (deleting)** ..... 3-24
- Phone Book (editing)** ..... 3-23
- Phone Book (saving)** ..... 3-17
- Phone Book (using)** ..... 3-19
- Phone Book search** ..... 3-19
- Phone Help** ..... 2-18



Picture Editor .....	8-22
PIN .....	17-2
PIN Entry .....	13-2
PIN Lock .....	17-2
Playlists.....	9-7, 9-9, 9-10
Portrait Position .....	1-2
Printing .....	8-26
Printing (Bluetooth®).....	8-26
Public wireless LAN services .....	15-6

## Q

Quick Operations .....	2-3
Quick Silent .....	2-14

## R

Received Msg. View .....	5-33
Record Caller Voice .....	4-16
Recorder Contents .....	9-6
Recorder Link .....	15-17
Reference URLs .....	17-23
Reject (calls) .....	4-14
Relaxation Time .....	11-12
Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai®) .....	11-21
Call Remote Lock .....	11-22
Count for Lock .....	11-48
Mail Remote Lock .....	11-21
Notice Settings .....	11-48
Remote Monitor.....	4-14
Reply .....	5-12, 5-21, 5-28
Auto Reply .....	5-28
Opening received message for reference .....	5-28
Set Quick Reply .....	5-28
Reply Assist Dictionary .....	3-11
Reset (→ Master Reset).....	16-8
Reset All.....	16-8
Reset Settings .....	16-8
Retrieve NW Info .....	16-7
Retrieving Network Information.....	1-6
Review .....	8-21

RSS Feeds .....	6-9
-----------------	-----

## S

<b>S! Addressbook Back-up .....</b>	<b>15-20</b>
Auto Sync Settings .....	15-26
Confirming password .....	15-26
Sync Log.....	15-26
<b>S! Applications .....</b>	<b>10-2</b>
<b>S! Circle Talk.....</b>	<b>12-9, 12-17</b>
Accepting requests .....	12-10
Initiating .....	12-10
IP Service Setting .....	16-7
Registering Members .....	12-9
<b>S! Contents Store.....</b>	<b>12-4</b>
<b>S! FeliCa (→ Osaifu-Keitai®).....</b>	<b>11-19</b>
<b>S! Friend's Status.....</b>	<b>12-6, 12-16</b>
IP Service Setting.....	16-7
Opening Member Status.....	12-7
<b>S! GPS Navi .....</b>	<b>11-31</b>
<b>S! Information Channel (Japanese) .....</b>	<b>12-3, 12-14</b>
Weather Indicator .....	12-3
<b>S! Mail.....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
Attaching Files .....	5-5
Create Msg. Size .....	5-24, 5-35
Feeling Mail .....	5-5
Graphic Mail .....	5-6
S! Mail Settings .....	5-35
<b>S! Mail (sending) .....</b>	<b>5-4</b>
<b>S! Quick News (Japanese) .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
Automatic Update .....	12-14
Deleting items .....	12-14
<b>Safety Precautions.....</b>	<b>vi</b>
<b>SAR.....</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>6-8, 6-15</b>
<b>Scan Barcode .....</b>	<b>11-38</b>
Open Barcode .....	11-52
Scanning during text entry.....	11-52
Using scan results .....	11-52
<b>Scan Card .....</b>	<b>11-40</b>

Using scan results .....	11-54
<b>Scan Text.....</b>	<b>11-41</b>
Scanning and pasting during text entry .....	11-54
Using scan results .....	11-55
<b>Scanning Receipts .....</b>	<b>11-14</b>
<b>Schedules (→ Calendar).....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
<b>Scratch Pad.....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
<b>SD Local Contents .....</b>	<b>14-9</b>
<b>Search .....</b>	<b>3-15</b>
<b>Security Codes .....</b>	<b>2-17</b>
<b>Sent Msg. View .....</b>	<b>5-33</b>
<b>Set as Wallpaper.....</b>	<b>14-8</b>
<b>Set Date/Time .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
<b>Set Key Light .....</b>	<b>16-4</b>
<b>Set Key Shortcut .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
<b>Set Quick Reply .....</b>	<b>5-28</b>
<b>Set Sent Cancel .....</b>	<b>5-23</b>
<b>Set Time Zone.....</b>	<b>11-26, 16-2</b>
<b>Set to Default (S! Applications) .....</b>	<b>10-7</b>
<b>Shortcuts .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
<b>Show My Number .....</b>	<b>4-20</b>
<b>Show Secret Data.....</b>	<b>13-3</b>
<b>Side Keys .....</b>	<b>1-3</b>
<b>Signature.....</b>	<b>5-22</b>
<b>Simple Menu .....</b>	<b>2-5</b>
<b>Simulated Call.....</b>	<b>11-23</b>
<b>Slide W paper .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Small Light.....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>SMS .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
SMS Settings .....	5-37
<b>SMS (sending) .....</b>	<b>5-9</b>
<b>Snooze .....</b>	<b>11-8, 11-9</b>
<b>Softkeys .....</b>	<b>1-8</b>
<b>Software Update .....</b>	<b>17-5</b>
<b>Sort Spam Mail .....</b>	<b>5-16, 5-31</b>
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts .....</b>	<b>3-5, 16-4, 16-5</b>
<b>Speaker .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>17-18</b>
<b>Specifications (by function) .....</b>	<b>17-19</b>
Basic Operations .....	17-19



Calling .....	17-19
Camera & Imaging .....	17-20
Connectivity & File Backup .....	17-22
Data Folder .....	17-22
Digital TV .....	17-20
Entertainment .....	17-22
Handy Extras .....	17-21
Internet.....	17-20
Memory Card .....	17-22
Messaging.....	17-19
Network.....	17-22
S! Applications & Widgets .....	17-21
Universal Operations, Etc. ....	17-19
Video & Music .....	17-21
<b>Speed Dial/Mail .....</b>	<b>4-7, 5-22</b>
<b>Spinguru Menu .....</b>	<b>2-6</b>
<b>Standby.....</b>	<b>1-6</b>
<b>Standby Shortcuts.....</b>	<b>2-11</b>
<b>Status Icon List .....</b>	<b>1-7</b>
<b>Status Templates .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>Still images (capturing) .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
Easy Auto Camera .....	8-5
ISO Sensitivity.....	8-28
Long Exposure .....	8-28
Picture Size .....	8-27
Pro Auto Camera .....	8-5
Quick Camera .....	8-3
Shake Reducing.....	8-28
Shutter Sound .....	8-28
White Balance.....	8-28
<b>Still images (capturing &amp; sending) ...</b>	<b>8-5, 8-9</b>
<b>Still images (editing) .....</b>	<b>8-22</b>
Additional editing options .....	8-31
Changing sizes .....	8-23
Face Arrange .....	8-24
Merge Panorama .....	8-25
<b>Stopwatch .....</b>	<b>11-24</b>
<b>Strap Eyelet.....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Streaming .....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
<b>Swap Calls.....</b>	<b>4-19</b>

<b>System Graphics .....</b>	<b>16-3</b>
<b>System Sounds.....</b>	<b>16-6</b>

## T

<b>Table of Contents.....</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>Tasks .....</b>	<b>11-6</b>
Deleting Tasks .....	11-7
Editing tasks .....	11-45
Opening Tasks .....	11-7
<b>Text (editing) .....</b>	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Text Entry .....</b>	<b>3-6</b>
Emoticons .....	3-9
Hiragana .....	3-7
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric	
Conversion .....	3-9
Input/Conversion .....	3-20
Inserting line breaks .....	3-20
Inserting Phone Book entry items .....	3-20
Inserting spaces .....	3-20
Katakana .....	3-8
Mail & Web Extensions .....	3-9
One-Hiragana Conversion.....	3-8
Personal Mode .....	3-7
Pictograms & Symbols .....	3-8
Quick Conversion .....	3-9
Reset Log.....	3-20
Search Word .....	3-8
Single Kanji Conversion .....	3-7
Switching Entry Modes .....	3-6
Undo conversion or recover deleted	
characters .....	3-20
Using Character Codes .....	3-20
Using Pager Code .....	3-20
When Target Word is Not Listed .....	3-7
<b>Time Correction .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
<b>Time Shift .....</b>	<b>7-12</b>
<b>Touch-Tone Signal List.....</b>	<b>4-21</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>17-6</b>
<b>TV (watching) .....</b>	<b>7-5</b>
AV Mode .....	7-13, 7-14

Channels (saving) .....	7-13
Data Broadcast (Japanese) .....	7-6
Help.....	7-13
Other TV Listing .....	7-7
Program Info.....	7-7
TV Listing (Japanese) .....	7-7
Two Screen .....	7-8
Using wireless Headphones.....	7-14
<b>TV Player.....</b>	<b>7-9</b>
<b>TV programs (recording/playing) ....</b>	<b>7-9, 7-10</b>
Details .....	7-17
Marker List .....	7-18
Markers .....	7-18
Memory Remaining .....	7-17
Playback Pattern .....	7-17
Playing split files .....	7-17
Recorded programs (deleting) .....	7-17
Recorded programs (renaming) .....	7-17
Set Call Time Shift .....	7-16
Simultaneous Recording .....	7-9
Split File .....	7-17
<b>TV Timers (watching/recording).....</b>	<b>7-11</b>
Setting Timer via Program Info.....	7-7
Timer entries (opening/editing/deleting) ..	7-18
Timer log records (opening/playing/deleting)	
.....	7-18
TV Alarm .....	7-18
TV Reserve Prior.....	7-18
Wakeup TV .....	11-10

## U

<b>USB Charge.....</b>	<b>1-5, 1-12</b>
<b>User Dictionary .....</b>	<b>3-11</b>
Deleting entries .....	3-21
<b>USIM Card.....</b>	<b>17-2</b>
<b>USIM PIN (→ PIN).....</b>	<b>17-2</b>
<b>Utility Software.....</b>	<b>15-17</b>

## V

<b>Vector Pad .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>
-------------------------	------------



Vector Pad Settings .....	2-22
VeilView .....	2-18
Vibration .....	3-5
Video (deleting) .....	9-10
Video (downloading) .....	9-4
Video (playing) .....	9-6, 9-8
Video (recording) .....	8-16
Display Size .....	8-30
Microphone .....	8-30
Record Time/Size .....	8-30
Shake Reducing .....	8-30
Video Calling .....	4-5
Remote Monitor .....	4-14
Video Calls (answering) .....	4-5
Video Calls (placing) .....	4-5
Voice Calling .....	4-3
Voice Calls (answering) .....	4-3
Voice Calls (placing) .....	4-3
Voice Calls (placing while abroad) .....	4-4
Voice Recorder .....	11-37
Record Time .....	11-51
Save and Send .....	11-51
Save Recording to .....	11-51
Voicemail .....	4-12, 4-13
Volume (ringtones) .....	16-5

## W

Wakeup TV .....	11-10
Wallpaper .....	3-3
Slide W paper .....	3-3
Warranty .....	17-41
Weather Indicator .....	12-3
Icon Update .....	12-15
Manual Update .....	12-3
Weather .....	12-15
Weather Indicator List .....	17-17
Widgets .....	10-3
Wi-Fi .....	15-2
World Clock .....	11-26
WPS .....	15-3

## Y

Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
---------------------	-----

## Objectives

## Accessing Secret Files/Entries

Data Folder .....	14-4
Messaging folders .....	5-15
Phone Book .....	3-18
Schedules/tasks .....	11-4

## Accessing the Internet

Direct Browser .....	6-5
From message text .....	5-27
From scan results .....	11-52, 11-55
Media Player .....	9-4
PC Site Browser .....	6-5
RSS Feeds .....	6-9
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3

## Browsing/Viewing

Album .....	8-18
Blog Tool .....	12-13
Digital Media Viewer .....	12-5
Direct Browser .....	6-5
Document Viewer .....	11-34
e-Books .....	12-5
PC Site Browser .....	6-5
S! Information Channel .....	12-3
S! Quick News .....	12-2
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3

## Calculating

Calculator .....	11-17
Expenses Memo .....	11-18
Household Accounts .....	11-13

## Canceling

Alarm .....	11-9
Answer Phone .....	4-4
Call Barring restrictions .....	4-20
Call Forwarding .....	4-13
Customized Screen .....	3-20
Download Dictionary .....	3-11

Function Lock .....	13-2
Hour Minder .....	11-27
IC Card Lock .....	11-20
Keypad Lock .....	2-18
Large Font Menu .....	3-2
Manner mode .....	2-16
Offline mode .....	2-16
PIN Lock .....	17-2
S! Information Channel .....	12-3
Secret folders .....	5-30, 14-4
Simple Menu .....	2-5
Speed Dial entries .....	4-7
VeilView .....	2-18
Voicemail .....	4-13
Wakeup TV .....	11-11

## Changing

Administrator Code .....	2-17
Font Size .....	3-2
Font Weight .....	3-2
Handset Code .....	2-17
Handset mail address .....	5-3
Key Shortcut .....	2-9
Network Password .....	4-20
PIN .....	13-5

## Changing Ringtones

Phone Book .....	3-18
Ringtone/videos .....	3-5
Via Data Folder .....	14-8

## Composing/Sending Messages

Feeling Mail .....	5-5
From Call Log records .....	4-17
From Internet pages .....	6-11
From message text .....	5-27
From Phone Book .....	3-23
From received messages .....	5-12
From scan results .....	11-52, 11-55
From Scratch Pad .....	3-16
From sent messages .....	5-32
Graphic Mail .....	5-6, 5-24
Inserting ASCII Art .....	11-36



- PC Mail .....5-21
- S! Mail .....5-4
- SMS .....5-9
- Copying**
- Calculation results ..... 11-47
- Data Folder files .....14-4
- From text entry window .....3-10
- Scan results ..... 11-53, 11-54, 11-55
- Text (e-Books) .....12-15
- Text (Internet pages) .....6-11
- Text (Messaging) .....5-27
- Text (S! Information Channel pages).....12-15
- Downloading**
- Content .....12-4
- Customized Screen .....13-4
- e-Books .....12-5
- Free content .....12-4
- Music .....9-4
- S! Applications .....10-6
- Video .....9-4
- Widgets .....10-4
- Exchanging Files**
- Bluetooth® .....15-13
- Exchange Profile .....15-10
- IC Transmission .....15-11
- Infrared .....15-7
- Mass Storage .....15-17
- MTP Mode .....9-4
- Hiding Files/Entries**
- Data Folder .....14-4
- Messaging folders .....5-15
- Phone Book .....3-18
- Schedules/tasks ..... 11-43, 11-45
- Inserting/Removing**
- Battery .....17-4
- Memory Card .....14-5
- USIM Card .....17-3
- Locking/Restricting**
- Application Lock .....13-3
- Call Log .....13-3
- Direct Browser .....6-13
- Function Control .....13-4
- Function Lock .....13-2
- Incoming/outgoing calls .....4-20
- Keypad Lock .....2-18
- Mail records .....13-3
- Osaifu-Keitai® .....11-20
- PIN Entry .....13-2
- Secure Remote Lock .....13-2
- Managing Schedules**
- Calendar .....11-2
- Tasks .....11-6
- Measuring Time**
- Countdown Timer .....11-25
- Stopwatch .....11-24
- Notifying Phone Number**
- Opening My Details .....2-18
- Via Exchange Profile .....15-10
- Via IC Transmission .....15-24
- Via Infrared .....15-24
- Placing Calls**
- By entering phone numbers .....4-3
- From Call Log records .....4-17
- From Internet pages .....6-11
- From message text .....5-27
- From Phone Book .....3-19
- From scan results ..... 11-52, 11-55
- International calls .....4-3
- Speed Dial .....4-7
- Video Calls .....4-5
- While abroad .....4-4
- Playing**
- Answer Phone messages/caller voice .....4-4
- Files (Scan Barcode) .....11-53
- Music .....9-5
- Recorded TV programs .....7-10
- Recorded TV programs from Timer log...7-18
- Split files (TV) .....7-17
- Streams .....6-14
- Video .....9-6
- Video (transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders)..... 9-6
- Voice files ..... 11-37
- Voicemail messages .....4-13
- Rejecting**
- Calls from public phones .....4-11
- Calls from specified numbers .....4-11
- Calls from unsaved numbers .....4-11
- Undisplayable Caller ID .....4-11
- Withheld Caller ID .....4-11
- Resetting/Formatting**
- All settings .....16-8
- Handset .....16-8
- Memory Card .....14-6
- Saving**
- Attachments within Graphic Mail .....5-27
- Backup .....15-19
- Captured still images .....8-5, 8-8, 8-9, 8-10
- Draft messages .....5-23
- Edited still images .....8-22
- Files (Internet) .....6-11
- Files (S! Information Channel pages)...12-15
- Graphic Mail templates .....5-6
- Mail attachments .....5-26
- My Pictograms .....5-28
- Notepad entries .....11-35
- Phone Book entries .....3-17
- Recorded video .....8-16
- TV channels .....7-13
- Saving Phone Book Entries**
- Add New Entry .....3-17
- Data Folder files .....14-8
- During a call .....4-16
- From Call Log records .....4-17
- From message window .....5-27
- From scan results ..... 11-52, 11-54
- Scanning**
- Business cards .....11-40
- Kanji .....11-42
- QR Codes .....11-38



Receipts .....	11-14
Text .....	11-41
<b>Searching</b>	
Access points .....	15-4
Bluetooth® devices .....	15-14
Messages .....	3-15, 5-15
Music to download.....	9-4
Music to play.....	9-5
Notepad entries .....	11-51
Phone Book .....	3-19
Text (Internet pages).....	6-11
TV program information.....	7-13
Video to download.....	9-4
Video to play.....	9-6
Web Search.....	3-15
<b>Sending via Mail</b>	
Data Folder files .....	5-5, 14-3
Notepad entries .....	11-51
QR Codes.....	11-39
Scan results.....	11-53, 11-54, 11-55
Still images .....	8-5, 8-9
URLs .....	6-11, 6-14
Voice files .....	11-51
<b>Setting Wallpaper</b>	
From attached files .....	5-26
From scan results .....	11-53
From Sound/Display menu .....	3-3
Via Data Folder.....	14-8
Via mobile camera.....	8-9
<b>Showing in Standby</b>	
Clock/Calendar .....	16-4
Mobile Widgets .....	10-3
S! Applications.....	10-6
Standby Shortcuts .....	2-11
Wallpaper .....	3-3
World Clock .....	11-26
<b>Using as Alarm Clock</b>	
Alarm .....	11-8
Hour Minder.....	11-27
Wakeup TV .....	11-10

**Using Away from Home**

Alarm .....	11-8
Camera .....	8-2
Compass .....	11-30
Digital TV .....	7-2
Hour Minder.....	11-27
Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-19
Pedometer .....	11-28
Pen Light.....	2-18
Public wireless LAN services.....	15-6
Scratch Pad .....	3-16
Search .....	3-15
S! GPS Navi .....	11-31
Voice Recorder .....	11-37



## Warranty & Service

### ■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

### ■ After-Sales Services

See **P.17-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.17-42**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



## Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**  
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

### SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**  
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113



# SoftBank 943SH User Guide

March 2010, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 943SH**

**Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION**



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力も。

**Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:**

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.